

QB
63
B5
1890

UC-NRLF



\$C 20 787

ASTRONOMY AND OBSERVATION.



By ELIZA A. BOWEN

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

NEW YORK

CINCINNATI

CHICAGO



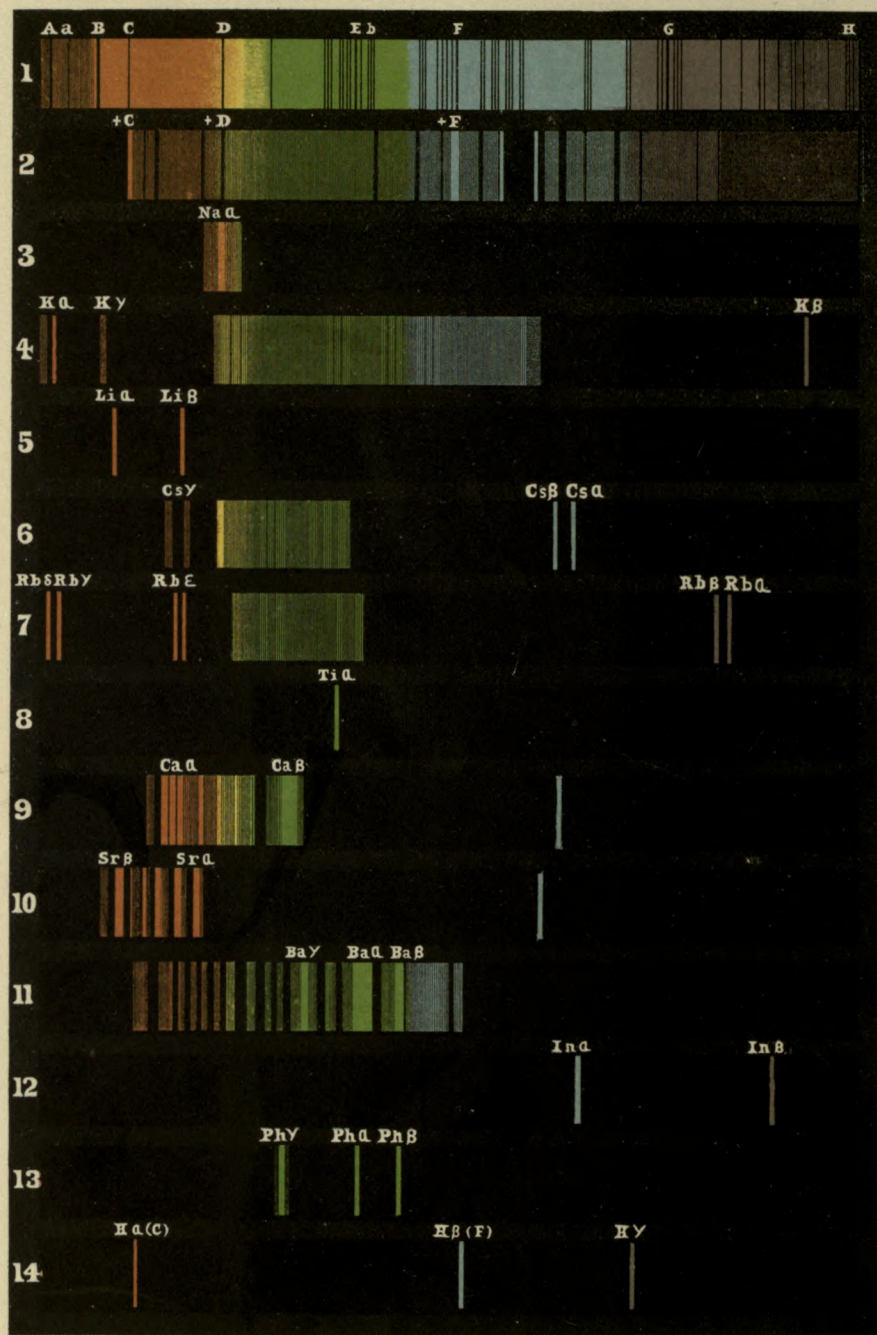
THE LIBRARY
OF
THE UNIVERSITY
OF CALIFORNIA

GIFT OF

Mrs. Henry J. Miller

ASTRONOMY BY OBSERVATION.

SPECTRA OF VARIOUS SOURCES OF LIGHT.



1. The Sun 2. The Sun's edge. 3. Sodium. 4. Potassium. 5. Lithium. 6. Caesium. 7. Rubidium. 8. Thallium.
9. Calcium. 10. Strontium. 11. Barium. 12. Indium. 13. Phosphorus. 14. Hydrogen.

ASTRONOMY

BY OBSERVATION

*AN ELEMENTARY TEXT-BOOK
FOR HIGH-SCHOOLS AND ACADEMIES*

BY
ELIZA A. BOWEN



NEW YORK ··· CINCINNATI ··· CHICAGO
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

TO
MRS. ZOE DANA UNDERHILL,
WHOSE ENLIGHTENED APPRECIATION OF OBSERVATION-STUDY
STIRRED ME UP TO WRITE THIS BOOK,
AND WHOSE STEADY FRIENDLY ENCOURAGEMENT
SUSTAINED ME THROUGH SEVERAL YEARS OF EXPERIMENTAL WORK.

COPYRIGHT, 1886, 1890,
By D. APPLETON AND COMPANY.

Printed by
D. Appleton & Company
New York, U. S. A.

EDUC.-
PSYCH.
LIBRARY

1888

QB 63
B5
1890
Educ.-
Psych.
Library

PREFACE.

THIS book has grown out of actual school-work, in which it was the teacher's object to make pupils studying elementary astronomy *observe* and *think*.

The following are its chief peculiarities :

1. An efficient, easy, well-tried plan for teaching the constellations is described. Its use will obviate the necessity of a teacher doing work out of school-hours, by enabling students to become independent observers.

2. Careful directions are given when, how, and where to find the heavenly bodies. Their motions are described in the order in which they can be seen by an observer, and in familiar language. Thus, the text-book may be a guide to the observation of beginners.

3. The student is excited to thought. Facts are stated first ; theory afterward, as a deduction from the facts. The selection of subjects for the student's thinking is a little different from that of other school astronomies. The general principle governing this selection is to make the student understand *what he can see*. The author has also desired in some degree to separate the work of the elementary teacher from that of the college professor. To observe the facts from which Copernicus argued ; to discuss them ; to perceive how they prove his conclusions ; to use in this the simpler geometrical conceptions, seem to the author suitable elementary work. It would be excellent elementary work if it could be combined with some practical angular measurements of a simple kind on the heavens.

The author knows high-school work well. The *thinking* of this book is fairly within the comprehension of the students of our reasonably good schools. The professed study of the theory of astronomy, in which there is no thinking, is a counterfeit.

The book presumes in those who study it a little knowledge of elementary geometry, and of the refraction, reflection, and dispersion of light. As all high-schools teach as much of these subjects as is needed, it seemed better to take thus much knowledge for granted, than to make a digression for the purpose of presenting it.

The author has probably experimented as much as anybody in teaching elementary pupils by observation and by questions which drew them out to discuss theory. But much review is always required, and, in order to save time, a text-book is necessary for it. Also, we can not ring up the planets, like scenes in a theatre, to be studied during the school-session, and therefore the theory must sometimes be taught in advance of actual observation. The author hopes the book will be useful for these purposes to teachers who use improved methods.

In writing it, another class of teachers has been much in view. In our high-schools and academies the teaching of astronomy is often in the hands of instructors who have little or no practical knowledge of the science. They are usually intelligent persons who would improve if the text-book were a guide to observation.

Another class of persons has also been in view. Of late years a great spirit of study has arisen among young people out of school. Their situation is very favorable for the study of astronomy, since they are not bound by school hours and sessions, but can take the planets when they come. It is hoped that they will be encouraged to study the heavens if a sufficient guide to observation is furnished. No study lends itself better to teaching by correspondence than astronomy.

BEECHCROFT SCHOOL, TENN.,

CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION.		PAGE	PAGE	
<p>An Easy and Effective Way to learn and teach the Constella- tions—How to direct the Observations of Pupils . . . 3</p>			<p>Tycho Brahe's Work—Kepler's Laws—Newton and the Solar Theory—Celestial Measurements described . . . 48</p>	
PART I.			PART II.	
CHAPTER I.			CHAPTER VIII.	
<p>Facts necessary to know before beginning Observation . . . 9</p>		<p>The Sun—His Apparent and Real Magnitudes—His Volume, Density, Light, Heat, etc.—The Sun, the Spectroscope, and the Telescope—The Photosphere—The Chromosphere—The Corona 52</p>		
CHAPTER II.			CHAPTER IX.	
<p>The Diurnal Motion of the Stars—How to observe it—How to interpret it—The Celestial Sphere—The Equinoctial and Horizon Systems of Circles 10</p>		<p>The Planets—Their Figures, Volumes, Densities, Orbits, Revo- lutions, Distances, Moons, etc.—The Planets and the Moon, with the Spectroscope and Telescope—Their Physical Con- stitution 62</p>		
CHAPTER III.			CHAPTER X.	
<p>The Annual Motion of the Stars, and how to observe it—The Annual Motion of the Sun, and how to observe it—The Connection and Interpretation of these Motions . . . 14</p>		<p>Meteoroids and Comets—The Zodiacal Light 71</p>		
CHAPTER IV.			PART III.	
<p>The Inequality of Days and Nights observed and interpreted— The Change of Seasons observed and interpreted—Unequal Motions of Sun and Earth—Precession of the Equinoxes— Time 23</p>		CHAPTER XI.		
CHAPTER V.			<p>The Heavens beyond the Solar System 75</p>	
<p>The Moon and her Motions—How to observe them—How to interpret them—Eclipses 31</p>		APPENDICES.		
CHAPTER VI.			APPENDIX A.	
<p>The Planets and their Motions—How to observe them—How to interpret them 39</p>		<p>Account of the Constellations, alphabetically arranged for Refer- ence 84</p>		
CHAPTER VII.			APPENDIX B.	
<p>The Attraction of Gravitation—The Mathematical Measurement of a Physical Force—Copernicus and the Solar Theory—</p>		<p>The Telescope 90</p>		
		APPENDIX C.		
		<p>Observation of Meteors and Comets 91</p>		
		<p>INDEX 92</p>		

INTRODUCTION.

For Teachers and Private Learners.

HOW TO LEARN AND TEACH THE CONSTELLATIONS.

WE can not help seeing the motions of the heavenly bodies, unless, like Bunyan's man with the muck-rake, we steadily look down. A professed study of astronomy which does not make us recognize these bodies and their motions, when we see them, may not be useless, but it bears some marks of counterfeit knowledge. A mere acquaintance with the constellations is a very subordinate part of the knowledge here recommended, but it has, besides its own value, a good deal of importance as a prerequisite to the rest.

There are two disadvantages in the way of a teacher who wishes to make his pupils in astronomy really study nature. He can not be with them at night without inconvenience, and work outside of school-hours. This is the first difficulty. Another is, the impossibility of having the planets brought out for inspection when he wants them, and also because, when they come, their motions are very slow.

After struggling a good deal with these disadvantages just mentioned, I found that by making young students learn the heavens as they do the maps of the United States or Europe, viz., by map-drawing, the whole of the first difficulty was obviated, and a large part of the second. They found the star-groups without trouble, for themselves. They were trained in observation, and they learned a great many of the motions incidentally. They became independent observers, and were so much interested in the practical study, that there was no doubt they would see and study for themselves whatever they could not see during the school-session.

No doubt a great many teachers can carry on this work quite as well as I can, or better; but, for the benefit of those who can not, I will describe it somewhat in detail.

The brighter stars in each constellation, when joined by imaginary lines, form a figure which is easily recognized when once suggested. Such figures are drawn in dotted lines on the maps attached to this book. If the student takes one figure at a time, and draws it repeatedly, until he gains the power to reproduce it on paper from memory, rapidly, without erasures, and with a fair degree of rough correctness, he can easily find it for himself if it is a conspicuous constellation, and he has some general idea in what part of the sky to look for it. And even if it is not a conspicuous constellation, he can easily find it, if it is adjacent to a constellation already known, and in a

known direction from it. Thus, beginning with conspicuous constellations, and proceeding to adjacent ones, and then to others adjacent to the last, they are all easily learned.

But this plan of teaching by map-drawing is not a mere substitute for what is called "pointing out the constellations," and is not adopted and recommended only because the other course is inconvenient or impossible when teacher and class lodge in different houses. It is so much the easiest way, that when instructor and pupils are already together in the evening, and the latter wish to learn the star-groups, the teacher will do well to sit in the house (as I have often done), draw the figures on paper or a blackboard, and send students out to locate the groups. At first the pupils feel helpless, and object; but a little trial soon convinces them how easy it is. If any find a difficulty, the others help them; and thus a teacher is spared additional work.

But mere drawing by the teacher is not sufficient, nor is that the plan recommended here. By the method described in the two preceding paragraphs, it is easy to have star-groups recognized at the time, but they will not be remembered, and must be taught again. Drawing by the pupil not only makes it easier to find them; they can hardly be fixed permanently in knowledge during the school-study, except by repeated drawing from memory. Whenever students have a few leisure moments, they should be called upon to cover the blackboard with these figures, or to reproduce them rapidly upon paper.

In order to secure repeated observation, it is best to have the groups learned one at a time; for, whenever the student goes out to find a new group, he is sure to look again at the old ones. The groups are fixed in memory, and also the habit of observation is strengthened. But the study of the motions gives far more interesting work than the mere identification of star-groups.

Any method of map-drawing already used in a school will answer for this purpose when carried out under the restrictions to be hereafter mentioned. The plan which I practice and recommend is called "drawing by dictation," now much practiced in the best schools. The teacher leads, standing at the blackboard, while pupils draw at desks in unruled exercise-books, which should not be used for any other purpose. When a teacher is wholly incapable of drawing even these simple figures, he can select some pupil to take the lead, who learns be-

forehand how to draw this group. Command of a pencil sufficient for this purpose is very common in all schools. Of course, the teacher is present to direct. The leader at the blackboard draws one of the lines of the figure and pauses a moment, while pupils follow with pencil and paper. Then he draws another line, and they follow, and so on until all the lines are finished. These lines are dotted on the map, but, in the exercise described, they are drawn continuous but very lightly. As the leader draws, he calls attention to the dimensions and positions of lines. No erasure whatever should be allowed. This is an important direction, for, unless it is observed, the teacher will be discouraged by the time consumed. It is not necessary to have more than a rough correctness, though, of course, pupils must not be encouraged to draw carelessly. After the lines are drawn, they must make the stars, the leader calling attention to the number and position. In the drawings made by leader and pupils, stars of the first magnitude are best represented by the symbol \bigcirc ; of the second, by $*$; of the third, by \times ; of the fourth, by \bullet . In the "Description of Constellations," in the Appendix, there is given the number of first and second magnitude stars for each figure, and other information of value in studying them. After each constellation is drawn, the name should be written two or three times, and also the names of any first and second magnitude stars mentioned in the "Description." Then students should be called upon to repeat names aloud, separately and in unison. Without this exercise they struggle a good deal with the names.

The drawing of a constellation must be made two or three times rapidly, and then the students are directed to turn over a leaf and draw from memory. The whole exercise, properly managed, need not take more than ten minutes. It should take place on the morning of a day which looks as if it would be followed by a clear night. If rain and interruption occur, the exercise should be repeated when again there seems a chance for observation at night. Each repetition takes less time. After drawing a figure, the student is always told to turn it in every direction, and is warned that he can not be sure beforehand exactly how it will be turned.

The dictation exercise in drawing, which has been recommended and described, is a species of free-hand drawing, which affords valuable training to hand and eye. Students can certainly learn the figures by drawing directly from the maps, but they will make little cramped figures, and find it difficult to draw any others, even on the blackboard.

I hope I may be pardoned for telling of a test to which I put this method of teaching constellations. I took a class of fifteen children, whose average age was twelve years, but of whom three were only eleven years old, and I began to teach them the constellations at the beginning of the school year in September. Until a test was made at the beginning of November, I was never with them at night on a single occasion, nor had they any one at home who gave them help. They simply drew the figures and stars, and were drilled as here described. There was a good deal of bad weather, and another study took the place of star-learning, at least a third of the time. The lesson was

half an hour long. At the first of November they knew perfectly every constellation which had been visible. They could tell where all the first and second magnitude stars were found. They knew nearly every third-magnitude star and a good many fourth. They could trace the ecliptic in the heavens, or draw it. They knew Algol, Mira, Epsilon Lyrae, the star in Draco which was the pole-star; Var in Aquila, midway between the poles; and what made them all remarkable. They knew the points where the sun is found, December 22d and March 20th, and their names. They found no difficulty whatever in learning Pisces and Aquarius. Some had a little trouble with Hercules and Ophiuchus, but finally found them. They noticed the daily and annual motion of the stars, the revolution of the moon and her motion among the stars, and they watched with great interest the motion of Venus among the stars. They also noticed that the constellations of the zodiac seemed to approach the sun in succession, and other points not necessary to mention. Their enthusiasm was very great, and I am sure they are observers for life.

This book is, of course, not intended for children, and the subject is only mentioned to show what can be done by the method here recommended of promoting observation.*

For the benefit of inexperienced teachers, it is well to give some advice in regard to the constellations which it is best to begin with. Of course, the Great Dipper, the Little Dipper, and Cassiopeia should come first. Chapter II contains directions how to learn them. After these are learned, some conspicuous constellation must be selected and discovered. For the three autumn months, Pegasus is best; for the winter months, Orion; for spring, Leo Major; for summer, Scorpio. By finding these in the "Description of Constellations, alphabetically arranged," Appendix A, the learner and inexperienced teacher will find hints how to proceed.

When the student has drawn and identified one of these four constellations, he can select from the map on which it is found some group adjacent to it. He next reads the account of the selected group in the "Description," page 80, and after drawing is prepared to find it; when, by the help of maps and "Descriptions," he selects another group, draws and discovers it, and so on until all are learned.

Another plan, good for a learner without a teacher, or for a teacher to use with pupils, is to begin with the first-magnitude stars. Since these and the planets are the brightest stars visi-

* It is certainly desirable to have children of about twelve years old learn constellations, and to encourage them in that simple observation of motions which follows almost of itself. I have probably given as much time to this work for ten years, as any teacher in the United States; and I at first thought of making a Primer of Astronomy for such children. I abandoned this idea because my experience showed that children could do nothing whatever with books or maps unless assisted by just as much oral teaching as would accomplish the result without the aid of such a book. To furnish such a book would, I think, merely encourage a particularly bad form of that prevalent book cram which pretends to be science teaching. I am quite certain that those teachers who make the use of this book that I design, will afterward begin the work orally with younger pupils.

ble, any observer can find them at any time if he knows how many there are above the horizon. A private learner can use one of the maps at one of the definite dates and hours given on the maps. A teacher can tell his pupil how many 1st m. stars can be seen at some early hour of the evening. They should know also how many are near enough to the horizon to be obscured by smoke or haze, if there is any. After students find them, a teacher can, from color, position, etc., name them intelligibly to students with the constellations to which they belong. Finally, the student draws the figure of each group, and identifies it. This plan interests students a good deal, because it begins with the most conspicuous stars.

In nearly every class studying astronomy at school there will be found a few brighter students who could use maps to identify constellations, without any help whatever from their teacher. But a majority of the students in such a class will not learn those groups unless their instructor makes them a subject of regular lessons and teaching. Also, in a large number of the schools for which this book is written, so limited a time is given to astronomy that the constellations must be learned as rapidly as is consistent with good work. In most such cases a teacher will do well to promote speed by going out with his pupils once or twice at night when they are learning the groups. But there is no economy of time in this unless these students have already made drawings of those groups which they are to identify. *By no other method than that of repeated drawing can the constellations be so quickly, so perfectly, and permanently learned.* Also, it will not do to rush too hastily over this part of the study. As soon as they know the constellations of the zodiac, they should practice drawing them on the ecliptic. For practice, it is best to draw, first, a straight line, and then draw the constellations on it in correct order and position. The ecliptic is the important circle, and the whole time in drawing circles should be given to it. For such knowledge of the other circles as is needed, they can use the maps.

No elementary science is so independent of expensive apparatus in schools as astronomy. The Copernican theory is the groundwork of all formal treatises on astronomy, and its author died before the invention of the telescope. No telescope used in ordinary schools could aid in its rational acceptance, except by showing the phases of Venus and the moons of Jupiter. The bearing of these on the theory could not be at all appreciated by a person who had not previously studied what can be seen with the naked eye. It is, of course, a pleas-

ure and advantage, after learning what can be seen without a telescope, to see these objects, and also the rings of Saturn, the surface of the moon, and the resolution of some nebulae; but I doubt whether it is any advantage at all until the student has used his unaided eyes. The most important need for high-schools seems to me to be some simple means of taking angular measurements on the heavens. This brings out a little the relation of the study to mathematics.

Of course, a large part of the information in an elementary astronomy comes from investigators equipped with the refined and complicated instruments of modern observation. In this case ordinary people can not see for themselves, but must take the facts on testimony. But here the phenomena seen can be so well represented by picture that ordinary people are under no great disadvantage in following with intelligence the conclusions of astronomers. Of course, we could neither intelligently accept the evidence nor appreciate the conclusions if we are entirely ignorant of the principles on which the instruments are constructed; but these can be easily understood by the aid of a few inexpensive mirrors, lenses, and prisms.

It is my own experience that young persons have a sort of superstition about apparatus which looks complicated, and especially as if it cost a good deal of money. The feeling is diametrically opposed to the spirit of investigation, and therefore until they have become possessed of that spirit it is best to teach them with the simplest appliances.

Of illustrative apparatus, a globe, with the ecliptic traced on it in connection with the equinoctial system of circles, is important; but there is a very small, cheap terrestrial globe now much used in primary schools which has the ecliptic traced on it for the purpose of using the globe to show the circles on the heavens. It can be made to answer the purpose, using an India-rubber band for the horizon when we wish to show the angles it makes with the ecliptic. The celestial horizon in nature is such a well-defined circle, and the sphere so plainly revolves through it, that there is not much lost by the globe not revolving through the India-rubber band. Of course, a good celestial globe is a great advantage, provided it does not take the place of nature-study. Where we can see for ourselves, illustrative apparatus is useful only to give definiteness to our ideas derived from observation; but the study of nature should come first. I have many times seen expensive illustrative apparatus used so as to discourage observation. This was not intended, but practically this was the result.

SUPPLEMENT TO THE INTRODUCTION.

(NEW MATTER IN THE THIRD EDITION.)

NOTE BY THE AUTHOR.—Since the first edition of this book was published, I have had much correspondence with teachers using it, in regard to certain practical problems which arise in the combination of observation with book-study. I think I shall add to the usefulness of the book by some discussion of these difficulties. I have given to their solution years of thought and experiment with classes, and I am quite sure that the plan I suggest is the best that the nature of the case allows.

When to learn Constellations.—In using this textbook, students should, of course, learn Chapter I before beginning observation. They should then suspend book-study to learn the star-groups, for it is impossible to study in nature the motions of the earth, the moon, and the planets, without knowing perfectly by sight the chief polar constellations and those

belonging to the zodiac. In their study of the heavens, it is important to have students come as soon as possible to the zodiac, and in particular to those two zodiacal groups which at the time of that study may be found at dark just above the eastern and western sides of the horizon. On the apparent annual motion of these groups the reasoning of Chapter III is founded. This motion is very slow; and, in order that students may perceive some degree of it when they reach Chapter III, they should learn the groups as soon as possible. To give time enough for the change produced by this motion to become perceptible, it is best for the student, before studying Chapter II, to learn thoroughly all the constellations visible between dark and bedtime.

What Period of Time devoted to Book-Study and Observation will give Satisfactory Results?—I think that the mere text of this book could be learned in four months, or in less time. If more than six months were given to the mere text-book study, time would be wasted. But the observation contemplated in the book brings in some other considerations in planning the time and period of study.

In a year's time we can, with two exceptions, see nearly all of the phenomena described in Part I, pp. 10 to 52 of this book; not so as to make subsequent observations unnecessary, but so that with some variations, easily comprehended, the continued observation will be largely a repetition of what has already been seen and understood. The exceptions are, that Venus and Mars can be seen as evening stars about every alternate year only. But the student can, without any serious disadvantage, be left to study Mars and Venus in nature after his school-work in astronomy has ceased. He is prepared to observe and understand the motions of Mars by the study of Jupiter and Saturn, which will always be visible during the school year. The motions of Venus are not complicated, and can be so visualized from description as to make the subsequent observation easy. Besides, Mercury can nearly always be seen as evening star in the spring, if the weather is good, and his motions help to make those of Venus understood. Under any circumstances it is desirable that students shall keep up observation of the heavens after leaving school; and a sight of Mars and Venus is an incitement to do so, when they have been well instructed. Probably the best test of a teacher's work in astronomy (where he is free to do his best) is found in his success in creating a permanent habit of observation—not with a few brighter pupils only, but with students of average capacity. To create such a habit, a teacher must himself acquire it.

During five months, which is half the school year, and is the period allotted to the formal study of astronomy in a great many schools, the most important part of this observation can be made. But the observation of five months is not so complete as would be desirable.

To overcome the difficulty arising from these facts, I have tried two plans, either of which has some advantages. By one plan, the lessons in astronomy come on alternate days only, but last through the school year. But, in adopting this plan, it is important that students should be encouraged to give a few

moments to observation on every clear evening at dark. By the other plan, the lessons in astronomy come every day for five months; and afterward, at intervals, a few observation-lessons are secured.

How to make the Appropriate Observations precede or accompany their Related Portions of Theory Study.—Success in making astronomy a genuine study of nature depends on this, and my advice has been much asked about it. The plan which I recommend is the result of many years of thought, experience, and work.

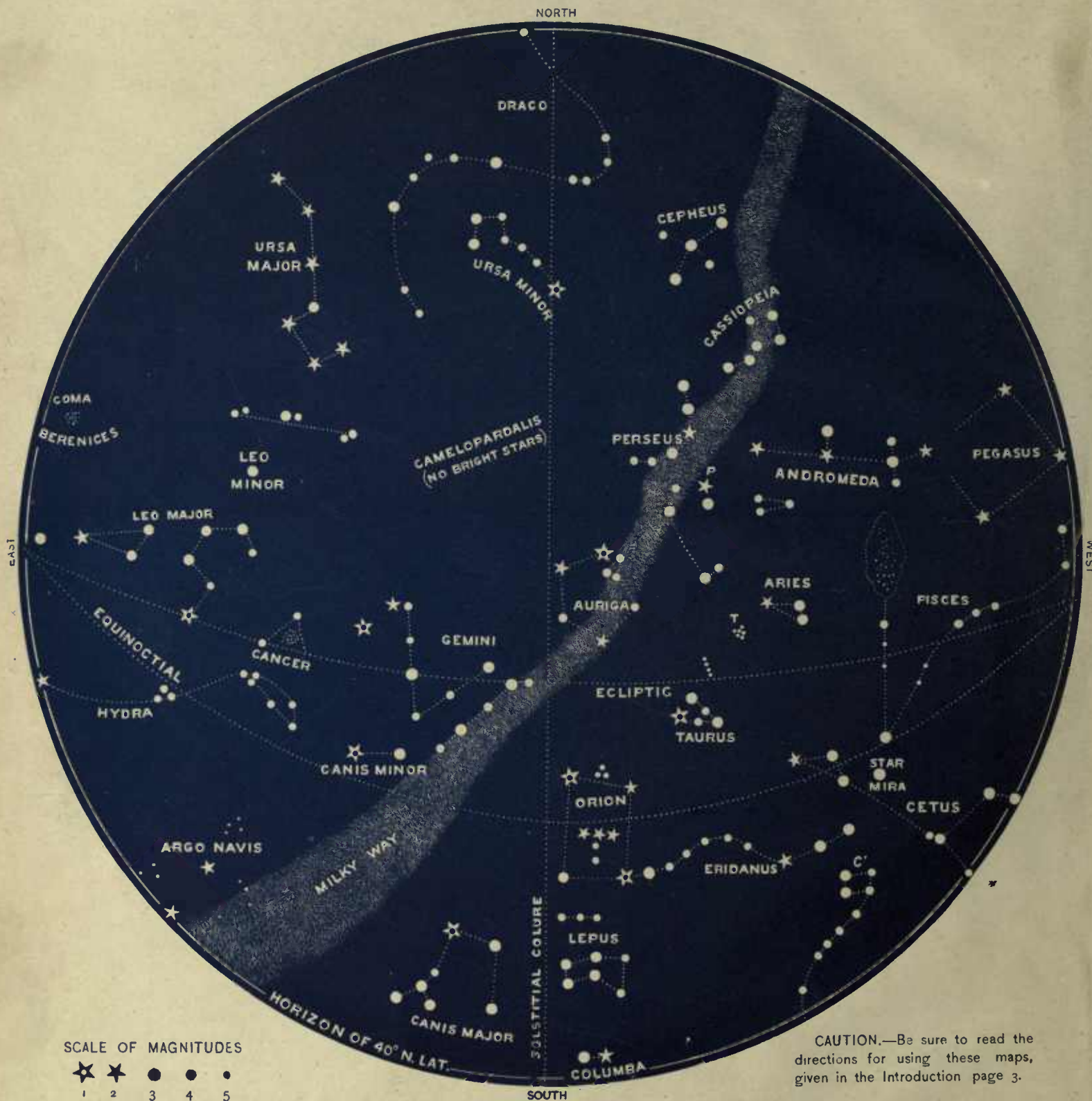
It is impossible perfectly to accomplish the object, but with good management much more is possible than would at first be supposed. In the first place, part of the time of each lesson or "recitation"—ten minutes or more—must be given to the consideration of all such phenomena as Nature offers to us on that evening. Nature will not wait for us, and we must see phenomena when she presents them to us. In the time given, as described above, to the observation-study, the teacher should tell the student what to see and how to see it, and make sure that he has seen what in previous lessons he was advised to see. The teacher is not, in this branch of the lesson, to explain the causes of phenomena or to discuss the connection of these facts with theory. On almost any night we can see presented together facts which are discussed in every chapter of Part I of this book. The confusion would be inextricable if we undertook to explain these facts in the indiscriminate succession in which they come. But the mere *seeing* of the phenomena is so simple and vivid that there is no confusion whatever in observing with attention all that can be seen.

At the end of the ten or more minutes which are devoted to the direction of this observation-study, the book-lessons come, taking up phenomena in the more systematic order of the book. But this whole matter will be better understood, and the great simplicity and easiness of the work appreciated, by considering in detail the facts which a teacher is to make his students see. These facts come under three classes:

I. This class includes those apparent motions of the fixed stars and sun from which we learn the earth's motion and position (Chapters I, II, and III). Since the diurnal motion of the stars can be seen on any clear night, there is no difficulty in bringing together the observation and book study (Chapter II) of the subject. But it takes a longer time to see the slow annual motion of the stars treated of in Chapter III. If, however, a student has (as before recommended) paused between Chapters I and II to learn the constellations thoroughly, and has then studied Chapter II in the book and in nature, he will perceive by the time he reaches Chapter III some degree of that change in the position of the groups which is described in Articles 24 and 25, and the teacher has but to call his attention to it for illustration. It is not necessary to anticipate by telling him something of the motion in advance. If he has known the groups, he will remember their position, and can see afterward that it is changed. Since the whole year's motion is but a continuance or repetition of such changes, and also closely resembles the diurnal motion, which he has previously studied, such

MAP I.

For Study of the Stars from January 20th to April 20th.



THE HEAVENS

AS SEEN

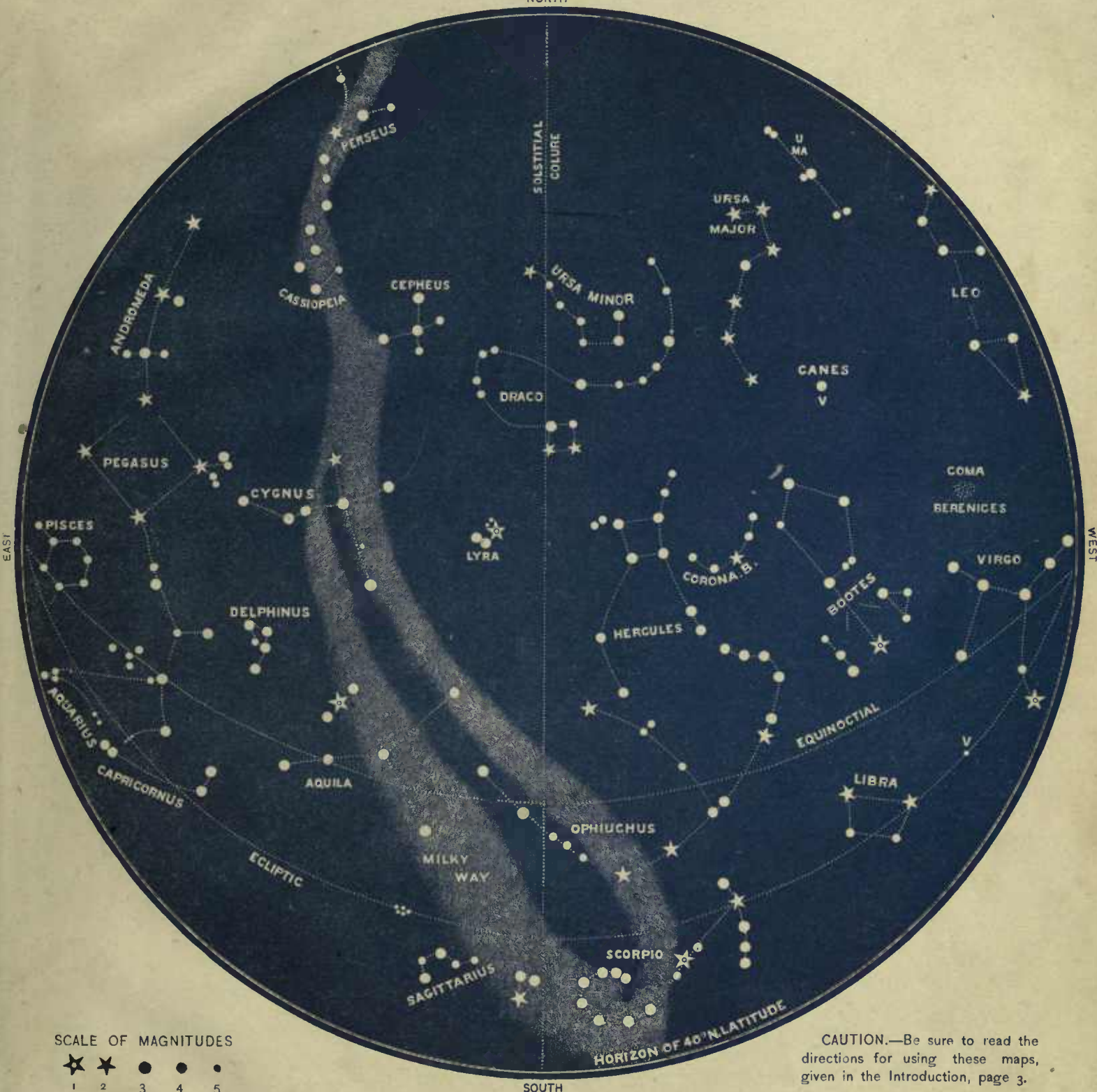
December 22d at midnight,
January 20th at ten o'clock,

February 4th at nine o'clock,
February 19th at eight o'clock

MAP II.

For Study of the Stars from July 22d to October 22d.

NORTH



THE HEAVENS

AS SEEN

June 22d at midnight,
July 22d at ten o'clock,

August 7th at nine o'clock,
August 23d at eight o'clock.

a student will perfectly understand and visualize the whole annual motion described in Chapter III.

If students have at the very first learned the zodiacal constellation, which is visible at dark just above the eastern side of the horizon, they will have seen two zodiacal star-groups in succession in that place when they reach the "Talk with Observers" (page 81)—that is, they will have seen the earth passing between the sun and two of these groups. After this the teacher should invariably ask the following questions once a month: (1) Between the sun and what zodiacal constellation is the earth now passing? (See Article 34.) (2) Name in order the constellations between which and the sun you have seen the earth pass. (3) In watching the heavens at dark, what zodiacal star-group have you lately seen disappear in the direction of the sun? (See Article 33.) (4) If you could see the stars when you see the sun, what constellation would you now see the sun in?

Students should be called upon monthly to repeat the nature-study of "Talk with Observers" (page 81), until they are quite familiar with the idea that at dark nearly the whole of the earth's path during the previous six months lies above them, extending in a semicircle (nearly) between the ecliptic and the sun.

The observation described in Article 34 (first paragraph on page 17) can be made on any clear night after that article is studied. When the student reaches Chapter III, Articles 28 and 29, he should begin at once to observe upon the horizon the north-south motion of the sun; and the teacher should insure the continuance of the observation during the entire school study of astronomy by asking questions about it at intervals of a few days at first, but of greater length afterward.

II. The second class of observations has reference to the moon and the planets. The difficulties about the moon are: Firstly, that the observation-study must begin with the new moon, and that students reaching Chapter V in their book-study would lose time if they waited for the new moon; secondly, the student can not afford to spend a month studying Chapter V. The following is, I think, the best solution of these difficulties: The student, watching the zodiac for other purposes, on every clear evening at dark is sure to see the moon before reaching Chapter V. Also she forces herself on the observer's attention by obscuring the stars as she advances to her full. Thus students are sure to see her revolution and phases before coming to Chapter V, even if the teacher does not mention them. The teacher can make observation a little more invariable and definite by always asking, just as soon as the moon begins to be visible at dark, "What constellation is the moon now in?" If students can answer this question daily, enough of the other facts will be seen to prepare them for the study of Chapter V as soon as they come to it. The account of the moon there given can then be, not crammed only, but visualized, which is the important thing. We can begin with this merely partial and incidental attention to the moon, because she comes again; and the book-study, to which it gives interest, prepares for more exact and complete observation afterward. The moon is extremely important and interesting, and there should be a final,

special study of her by observation. Since this second observation-study of the moon would neither fill up the whole daily lesson-time, nor could book-study be suspended a month for it, it must proceed concurrently with book-study, and it should, therefore, begin with the first new moon coming after Chapter VI (not Chapter V) has been studied.

There is but one way in which the observation of the planets can be carried on during the period of school-study. A teacher about to instruct a class in astronomy should find out what planets are visible when he begins, and when others will become evening stars. The first should be pointed out to students when they learn the constellations of the zodiac; the others as soon as they appear. So long as planets are visible, questions should be asked at intervals of a few days, to secure continued observation. The observation is of the very simplest character. It consists simply in watching the motion of the planet among the stars, as described in Article 123. The teacher asks, "Has the planet moved among the stars?" "In what direction?" There are a good many points to see: the planet seems to move, sometimes east, sometimes west; sometimes, for a few days, it seems to cease moving altogether; but the student will see all if he can answer these questions. But there are besides two phenomena to which, at the proper time, the student's attention should be called. One is the opposition of Mars, Jupiter, or Saturn. Before beginning to teach a class, the teacher should ascertain what oppositions occur (if any) during the period of study, and when. If such an event occurs before the student learns Chapter VI, his attention should, at the time, be called to the fact that the earth is then passing between the planet and the sun (see "Talks with Observers," p. 83). If the opposition comes after the study of Chapter VI, the nature-study should be repeated.

The other phenomenon is the greatest eastern elongation of Venus or Mercury; and before beginning to instruct a class their teacher should find out whether such an event occurs during the period of study, and the date of it. At the time of her elongation, the observer should see Venus or Mercury at sunset or just after, knowing that she has reached her greatest altitude above the horizon, and will afterward descend. He should see in the almanac the angle there given, and should understand that it is formed by lines from his eye to the sun and the planet (see Chapter VI, Art. 153 and 165).

A teacher familiar in nature with the phenomena of the moon and planets will probably add many questions to those I have given; and these will improve the result, *if they make observation definite, but do not deal with theory*. To interest students it is sometimes well to tell them that the facts they are called on to note are used in making many explanations in their subsequent book-study. There is one explanation which I except from those which it is desirable to avoid: it is always wise to make it when students themselves, unprompted, notice the apparent motion of superior planets from the eastern toward the western horizon. They should be told that it is apparent, and due to the earth's motion, which causes the fixed stars to have the same movement. As they study the annual motion of the

stars very early in their text-book, they will understand the explanation.

III. Besides the facts mentioned under I and II, it is important that the student shall know by sight other facts which can be seen only at particular seasons of the year. These are described in various parts of this book; but, except by a somewhat rare coincidence, it is impossible to join book-study and observation. This is of very little consequence, provided the teacher calls attention to them when they come. This requires but a very few moments. The facts may be seen before the explanation; but such is the vividness of things seen, that the student will not forget them; or they may be seen afterward, and, if necessary, the student may refer to the book again. These facts will be enumerated here, with times and references.

Summary.—When school begins in September, students should, just as soon as possible, learn the zodiac and ecliptic, so as to see the aspect of the zodiac when Sagittarius is on the meridian. They can be told that it is just what they would see at sunset, September 21st, if it were possible to see sun and stars at the same time. The points to note are, that Sagittarius is far south, and that the zodiac and ecliptic come to the east and west points of the horizon in a path very oblique, or very much inclined to the horizon. (See Map II.) The teacher should find from the almanac the date of the new moon coming nearest to September 21st, and at that date should call attention to the fact that a line joining the horns of the new moon is nearly perpendicular to the horizon. (See Art. 105, p. 35.) The teacher should also find from the almanac the date of the full moon coming nearest to September 21st, and at that time should call attention to the fact that the harvest-moon rises only a little later for several evenings. It is well to see also that the moon rises farther north every evening, showing that she travels northeast. (See Art. 109.) On September 22d the observer should see that the sun sets due west, noting also the equality of the day and night.

On November 13th, the observer may be told that meteors are to be looked for after twelve o'clock at night; and on November 27th, before twelve. (See Art. 208, note at end of Chapter X, and Appendix C.) In the latter part of November, or early part of December, the student's attention should be called to the aspect of the zodiac and ecliptic when Pisces is on the meridian. It is the aspect of sunset on December 22d. (See Map III.) The student should note that the zodiac and ecliptic extend northeast from the western horizon. (This is the aspect of the diagram, Fig. 7, page 17.) On December 22d the student should look at the sun when it is on the meridian at noon, and should note the obliquity of an imaginary line

from the sun to himself. (See Art. 63.) He should be reminded that to find the sun vertical at noon he must travel south to the Tropic of Capricorn. (See Art. 80, etc.) At sunset, December 22d, he should note that he is northeast from the sun. (See Art. 37, Chapter III.) The student should also note the sunset sun, at intervals of a few days, to see that it is "stationary," and should keep this up until the sun begins to move northward. (See Art. 28 and Art. 50, last paragraph.) On December 22d he should see in the almanac the extreme inequality of the day and the night.

During February and March the aspect of the zodiac and ecliptic, with Gemini on the meridian, must be noted. (See Map I.) It is the aspect of sunset, March 20th. The zodiacal light is to be seen at the same time. (See Art. 217.) The student is to note that when Gemini is on the meridian above the horizon, the zodiac and ecliptic come to the horizon in a path not very far from perpendicular.

At the time of the new moon nearest to March 20th (learned from the almanac), students should note that a line joining the moon's horns is nearly horizontal. (See Art. 105.) On March 20th they should note that the sun sets due west, and should see in the almanac that the days and nights are nearly equal.

During May and June observers should note the aspect of zodiac and ecliptic, when Virgo is on the meridian. It is the aspect of sunset on June 22d, though the stars are obscured at sunset. The observer must note that the ecliptic and zodiac extend southeast from the western horizon. At sunset, June 22d, the observer should note that he is southeast from the sun, which has been traveling north for six months. (See Art. 37.) He should note, in the almanac, the great inequality in the length of the day and the night. At midday, June 22d, he should look (through smoked glass) at the sun on the meridian, noting that a line from the sun to himself would be nearly, but not quite, vertical. He should be reminded that, if he traveled southward, he must go to the Tropic of Cancer to find the sun vertical on June 22d. He should watch the sunset at intervals, to see that the sun is "stationary." This should be kept up until the sun begins to move south. (See Art. 28 and Art. 50, last paragraph.)

There is no confusion whatever in carrying on these various lines of observation at the same time, both because of the great vividness of what we see, and because the observation is of extremely simple character.

N. B.—The various figures on the maps sometimes occur on more than one map. For the student to copy, it is best to take them from maps where they are found on or near the middle of the map.

NOTE.—In using Charts I, II, III, IV, it is best to forewarn students that, where figures must be represented very small, as on these charts, the stars appear relatively somewhat larger than in nature. A teacher will always find it wiser for students to draw on a larger scale. The figures on the chart facing page 10 are on a very good scale for their drawings.

The fuller charts at the end of the book are for reference after the stu-

dent has learned the brighter stars in the constellations, by means of Charts I, II, III, IV. The dotted lines show the boundaries of constellations, the Greek names of stars are given, and there is a fuller representation of the stars. The student's attention should be called to the fact that these charts represent the northern and southern hemispheres, the north pole being at the zenith.

ASTRONOMY BY OBSERVATION.

CHAPTER I.

PREPARATION FOR OBSERVING THE FIXED STARS.

NOTE.—This brief account is designed to furnish only so much general knowledge as is necessary to intelligent observation-study.

1. Fixed Stars and Planets.—Nearly all the stars which can be seen on a clear night belong to the number called fixed stars. These have been classed in groups called constellations. The fixed stars are so called because they do not appear to change places in regard to each other.* They move across the sky as if they were painted on a revolving canvas. There are five stars visible to the naked eye, and a good many more which can be seen with telescopes, that change places in regard to each other and the fixed stars. They are called planets. The five are named Saturn, Jupiter, Mars, Venus, and Mercury.

2. Constellations.—The fixed stars were grouped into constellations by ancient astronomers, who also gave the names to nearly all the groups. The division was arbitrary, but it is inconvenient to change it. The names were those of mythological persons and animals, and there was usually a story attached to each. These tales have nothing to do with modern astronomy, so they are omitted here. They can be learned by looking out the names in a mythological dictionary. Maps and globes of the heavens once had the figures of these imaginary beings painted on them, but they were confusing to users of maps, so they are now omitted. The simple maps attached to this book give only the brighter stars; but, on maps giving a full representation of the stars, the constellations are bounded by dotted lines, like political divisions on a map or globe of the earth.

3. Magnitudes.—The fixed stars are classified according to their apparent size or brightness. Beginning with the brightest, they are called stars of the first, second, and third magnitudes, etc. In this book the abbreviations 1st m., 2d m., 3d m., etc., are used. There are six magnitudes of stars visible to the naked eye. The stars, however, differ gradually in brightness, so

that the observer must not expect to see the magnitudes very distinct.

4. Nomenclature.—The ancients gave names to the brighter stars, and these are generally retained; but astronomers now use, as symbols to distinguish stars, the letters of the Greek alphabet, to which is added the genitive of the Latin name for the constellation. Thus, α Aurigæ, or Alpha Aurigæ, indicates the brightest star in Auriga, and β Orionis the second brightest star in Orion. The letters are used as symbols, in the order of magnitudes in each constellation.

5. 1st M. Stars.—Fourteen 1st m. stars are visible all over the United States. Their names, and the names of the constellations containing them, are given below:

Arcturus in Boötes.	Capella in Auriga.
Antares in Scorpio.	Pollux in Gemini.
Altair in Aquila.	Procyon in Canis Minor.
Aldebaran in Taurus.	Sirius in Canis Major.
Betelgeuse in Orion.	Spica in Virgo.
Rigel in Orion.	Regulus in Leo.
Fomalhaut in Piscis Australis.	Vega in Lyra.

Besides these, another 1st m. star, Canopus, is seen in States in the latitude of Tennessee, and farther South.

(Over forty 2d m. stars are seen in the United States.)

6. Milky-Way.—In studying the heavens in nature, the student must observe the Milky-Way. This is a band or zone of faint cloudy light, stretching round the heavens, and inclosing the earth like a ring. By watching it, the student will see that it divides at one place into two parts, or bands, which lie side by side, and come together again. It separates the heavens into nearly equal parts. A small portion of the Milky-Way is too near the south pole to be seen in the United States.

(See Appendix A, for reference in studying the constellations.)

Greek Alphabet.

α Alpha	η Eta	ν Nu	τ Tau
β Beta	θ Theta	ξ Xi	υ Upsilon
γ Gamma	ι Iota	\omicron Omicron	ϕ Phi
δ Delta	κ Kappa	π Pi	χ Chi
ϵ Epsilon	λ Lambda	ρ Rho	ψ Psi
ζ Zeta	μ Mu	σ Sigma	ω Omega

* The small deviation from the truth of this is given afterward.

CHAPTER II.

THE DIURNAL MOTION OF THE STARS, AND HOW TO OBSERVE IT—HOW TO INTERPRET IT.

7. Polar Constellations.—Fronting this page, there is a small map containing three very important groups of stars, called the Great Dipper, the Little Dipper, and Cassiopeia's Chair. All these can be seen by an observer in Canada or any part of the United States on any clear, moonless night, at dark, with the following exceptions: In the Southern States the Great Dipper is so low down in midwinter (being partly on the horizon), and Cassiopeia is so low in midsummer, that at those seasons it is not possible to distinguish them very clearly. But even in midwinter or midsummer the observer in the Southern States can easily see them all by sitting up a little later.

In order to observe well the diurnal motion of the stars, it is necessary to know these groups. It is best to begin with the Great Dipper. By turning the map so that the name of the current month will be at the top, the position of the group on the sky at eight o'clock will be represented. If the student will at night attentively consider the figure of the Great Dipper, and the part of the map upon which it is situated, he can go right out of doors to some point where he can have an unobstructed view toward the north, and at once find it. By drawing the constellation, as recommended in the Introduction to this book, his acquaintance with the Great Dipper will be fixed.

Next, the student, holding the map as before described, studies attentively, and draws, if possible, the figure of the Little Dipper. There is, he sees, a bright star (named Polaris) in the handle end. There are only two other bright stars, and they are in the bowl of the Little Dipper. They are called the "Guardians of the Pole." A chain of faint stars, perfectly distinct on a clear, moonless night, forms the handle and the part of the bowl nearest the handle. The student notes the peculiar curve of the handle, quite different from the handle of the Great Dipper, which bends backward.

In learning the Little Dipper, it is best to find Polaris first. It will aid in identifying Polaris if the student notes that there are, in the bowl of the Great Dipper, two stars which lie in a line with Polaris, and which are therefore called "The Pointers." After discovering Polaris, it is best for the student always to find next the two bright stars in the bowl of the Little Dipper, called the "Guardians of the Pole." They are easily found, because no other two stars so bright and so near each other can be seen so near Polaris. The fainter stars in the Little Dipper all lie, as the student may see from the

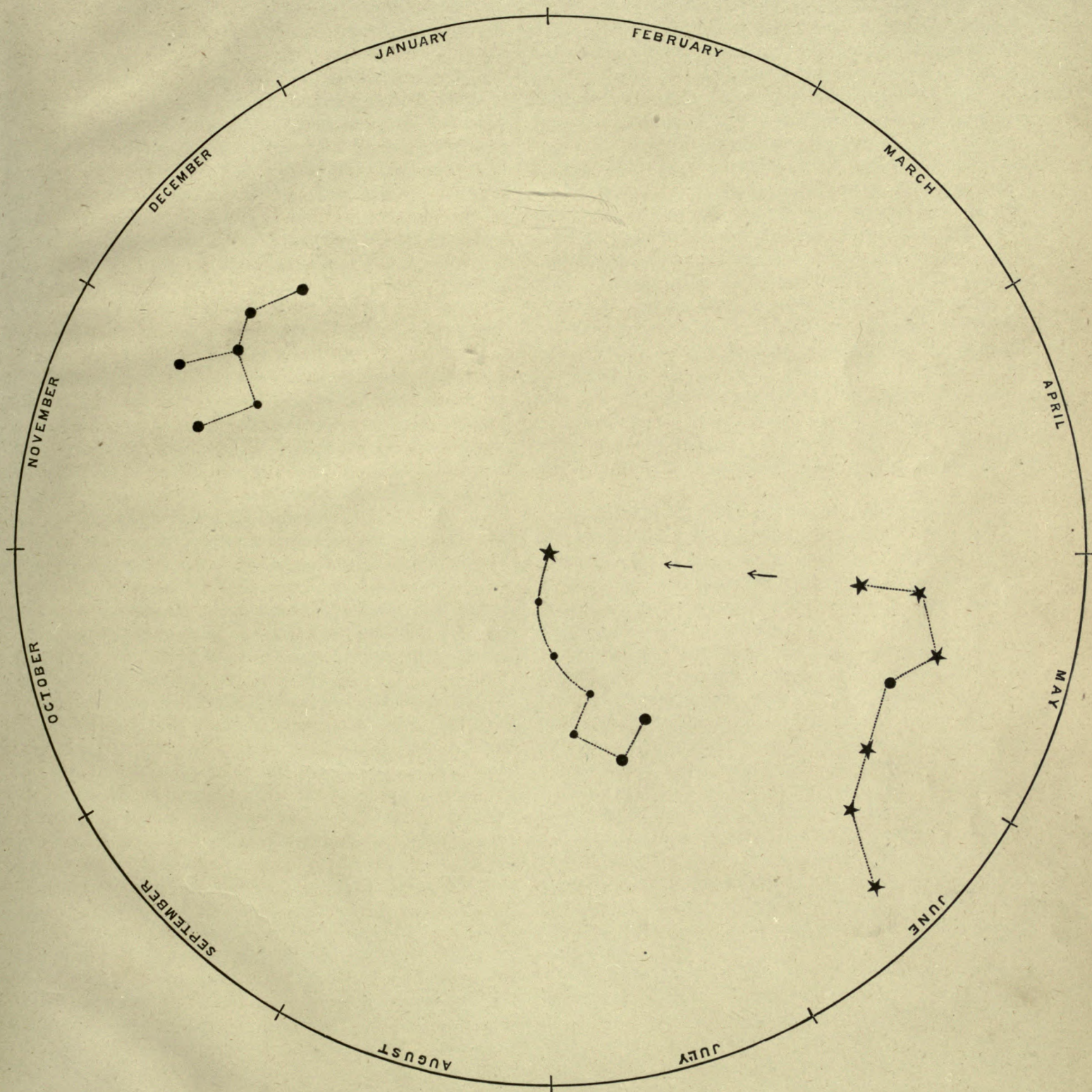
map, between Polaris and the Guardians. When the night is not very clear, they are not easy to find, but, by looking for Polaris first, and then the Guardians, the fainter stars can easily be discovered if visible.

After the Little Dipper is identified, the student studies Cassiopeia's Chair, and draws it if possible. He must hold the paper as before, and regard carefully the shape of the star-group and its place on the map. The two star-groups, Cassiopeia's Chair and the Great Dipper, are very nearly on opposite sides of the Little Dipper. All the stars of the Chair are bright, except the one in the front of the seat. Without this faint star, the group looks like a very irregular W. After observing all these things upon the map, the student will rarely find any difficulty in recognizing the "Chair" as soon as he goes out of doors and faces north.

8. Diurnal Motion of Polar Constellations.—After making acquaintance with these groups, the student is ready to undertake the principal object of investigation in this chapter, viz., the motion of these stars for twenty-four hours, or their *diurnal* motion. At dark the map must be taken from the book, and fastened to the wall or a board by a small round screw or pin pierced through Polaris, and permitting the map to revolve round the screw, which represents Polaris. The map is then turned upon the pin so that the positions of the star-groups resemble those in the heavens at the earliest hour in the evening at which they are visible. In turning the map to get the correct aspect, the student must not be governed wholly by the name of the month at the top, but he must make the appearance correspond exactly with the look of the heavens at the time.

He must leave the map in this position on the wall, and must return as nearly at midnight as possible. He will find that the star-groups have moved, so that the map no longer represents their positions on the sky. But, after watching the new arrangement attentively, he will see that, by revolving the map a little on the screw (in a direction contrary to that in which watch-hands revolve), he can again make it represent the situation of the star-groups on the sky. In doing this, the student must not perform careless and hasty revolving, making it necessary to correct his work by turning the map backward on the screw. He must be slow and careful, so that it will not be necessary to revolve the map in any way except that contrary to the watch-hand motion.

If the student leaves the map as then rectified, and rises in the morning just before light, to take another look at the stars in the north, he will find that the star-groups have again moved, so that the map must be corrected. But a little further revolution in the same direction will again set it right.



Again, on the next evening at dark, the map is found to need turning. The student will find that, by completing the revolution before partially made, the map will again represent the appearance of the star-groups in the heavens.

If, in addition to this work, a student selects any group of stars which he sees over the eastern horizon at dark, and which he thinks he could identify, if at dark he notes them well, to make sure that he can remember them, and if he then comes out again to look for them at or near midnight, he will see that they have moved from their earlier position, and are on the zenith, or near it. If he rises to look again before day, he will probably find that the star-group has disappeared, and, as he will probably think, below the horizon in the west. On the next evening at dark he will discover this cluster in the same place (so far as he can judge) in which he first saw it, viz., just above the eastern horizon.

9. From such observations as these we learn that all the stars in the heavens appear to revolve round the earth from east to west. In the heavens Polaris is nearly at the center of motion, and does not seem to move at all, while all the others circle round it. The position of Polaris resembles that of the points at the poles of the earth. Polaris is called the pole-star.

The student is probably already quite familiar with the fact that the sun has this same appearance of revolving round the earth. His presence prevents us from seeing stars in the daytime. Whenever the sun is eclipsed by the moon coming between him and our earth, we see the stars shine out around him, just as they shine at night in his absence.

10. **Motions on Earth.**—Now, the student has probably often noticed, when riding in a carriage, that trees and other bodies, which he knows to be at rest, seemed to move in consequence of his own motion. But, more than this, almost every student has been so situated on a few occasions that his senses had a very strong delusive impression that other objects were moving, when yet his reason convinced him that they were at rest and he was himself in motion. A person in a boat pushing off from shore sometimes feels this delusion very strongly. In all such cases the mover is carried without any conscious exertion, without any perceptible jarring, jolting, or noise. If, now, the earth revolved without affecting any of our senses except sight, it is certain we should receive a very strong delusive impression that sun and stars were moving, and we ourselves were at rest. But there is not anything in all these facts to decide for us whether the earth moves or whether sun and stars move. We only know that the stars would *appear* to move whether they move or we; and, without some further experi-

ence, we should not be able to determine which was the mover.

11. **Plane of the Motion.**—We call the direction in which the earth moves *east*; that in which the stars move, or seem to move, *west*. If the student will stick pins in parts of his dress at various heights from the floor, and will then, standing on one spot, revolve * axially, or turn round, he will notice that all the pins revolve; that a line drawn through the centers of all these revolutions would be a vertical line, or a line perpendicular to the floor. The pins move in circles, since throughout their motion they are, each one, all the time at the same distance from the center or axis (as the vertical line is called), and each pin is, at every point of its revolution, at the same distance from the floor. Therefore the circles are all parallel to each other and the floor, and perpendicular to the axis. Every particle in the student's body revolves in a circle parallel to the floor and perpendicular to the axis. The earth's rotation on her axis in twenty-four hours makes every particle of matter in it move in a circle. Some of the circles are larger, some smaller; and all the centers are on a line called the axis, which is perpendicular to the planes of the circles.

12. **East and West.**—Now, all these particles move in parallel lines in the same direction. We call that direction east. West is the opposite direction, or that in which sun and stars seem to move daily around the earth. East and west are not directions in the sense in which north and south are. If a traveler could move round the earth through the poles, we should call the direction of his motion north until he reached the north pole, and after that we should call it south. But if he journeys round the earth on the equator or on any of its parallels, we call the direction of his whole motion east, or else we call the same west. The explanation of this is that east and west are mere directions of revolution, while north and south are fixed, or absolute directions.

When we say "The sun rises," the people on the other side of the globe say "The sun sets." When both we and they face north, the sun is on our right, on their left, at the period which we call sunrise. This follows from the fact that their heels and ours are turned toward each other.

13. **The Poles.**—There are, of course, two centers of motion, or poles, on the celestial sphere. Travelers who have been south of the equator tell us there is no star near enough to the center to be actually motionless; but they can see a point of the heavens around which the stars move in smaller and smaller circles.

* This must actually be done.

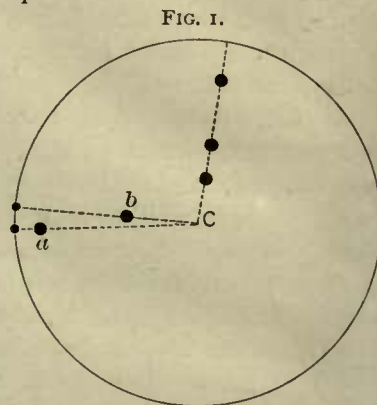
14. Polaris.—Travelers also tell us that, at the equator, Polaris is on the horizon; and as they journey north it rises above the horizon, its distance from the north point of the horizon being always equal in degrees to the observer's distance from the equator of the earth, or, in other words, to his terrestrial latitude. Thus, sailors at sea ascertain their latitude by measuring the height of the pole-star above the horizon. At the pole Polaris would be on the zenith. Any student of this book who chances to journey far north or south must be sure to look at the pole-star.

15. Polaris is not exactly at the center of motion. It is more than a degree from the pole, and so moves in a very small circle round it. It is so near that with ordinary observation it appears to be at the pole; but by very careful watching any student may detect the motion of Polaris. This is most easily discovered when its positions at dark in the evening and just before light in the morning lie on a vertical or on a horizontal line. We can tell when this is the case by the fact that the pole, Polaris, and the star Caph in Cassiopeia's Chair, are all nearly in line. Caph is the star at the lower end of the front leg of the Chair. When Polaris and Caph are in a vertical line in the early evening, the early evening and early morning positions of Polaris lie on a nearly vertical line. The same rule holds good when the line is horizontal. The variation is horizontal in September and March; vertical in December and June. At other times it is oblique and not so easy to detect. When it is horizontal, the student finds at dark a place where he can stand and see Polaris just on or behind a vertical line formed by a side of some house, window, or other object. If the variation is vertical, the line of the house, etc., must be horizontal. In the morning, while it is yet dark, the student must stand exactly where he stood before, and he will find that Polaris no longer touches the line. The star will have moved behind the house or farther from it.

16. The Celestial Sphere.*—When we look at the heavens on a starry night, we seem to see half of a great globe or sphere on which appear thousands of stars. This look of a globe is delusive, and, when stars seem to be side by side on the sphere, it is only because we see them in nearly the same direction from ourselves, and thus we project them on neighboring points of the imaginary sphere in the center of which we seem to be situated. Thus, in Fig. 1, the observer at *C* sees the ob-

jects at *a* and *b*, projected near each other on the sphere, though they are really far apart.

17. This appearance of a sphere makes it convenient for us to represent the stars on a globe, in order to estimate distances. It is true, the heavens are concave, and the globe is convex. But, let us suppose the globe were made of very thin blue glass, and the stars were painted inside so as to show through. It is evident the proportional distances would be the same on the concave and convex sides. We need an artificial globe, mainly to show circles and estimate distances—not, as in the case of the terrestrial globe, to *show us how the sphere looks*.



18. The Circles.—All students of geography will remember how we take the measurements called latitude and longitude by the aid of the opposite points called poles, and by the great circle lying half-way between them called the equator. The other circles used are parallels to the equator, and perpendiculars to it passing through the poles.

On the celestial sphere also, the centers of motion are used as poles, and a great circle called the equinoctial is measured half-way between the poles. The parallels are called diurnal circles, and the great circles running through the poles are called hour-circles. Distances are measured east and west, north and south, just as we measure latitude and longitude; but they are called instead declination and right ascension. Very often they are designated by the symbols R. A. and D.*

The earth's axis is a part of the line joining the celestial poles, the plane of the equator is the plane of the equinoctial, and thus these ways of measuring the earth and the heavens correspond exactly.

But it is puzzling to young students that, whereas there is only one set of circles to measure the earth, three are used in measuring the heavens. At present, the student will be expected to hear of only one more.

19. The terrestrial circle which we call the horizon of a place does not divide the earth in halves, and so is not a great circle; but it outlines a circle on the celestial sphere called the celestial horizon, which divides that sphere into halves, the visible and the invisible halves.

* This subject is treated after that of the diurnal motion in order that the knowledge of the motion of the stars round the pole may aid the student in attaching ideas of reality to the work. The account is very short and simple, because a detailed statement would convey no ideas to those who use no instrument, and make no measurements on the sphere.

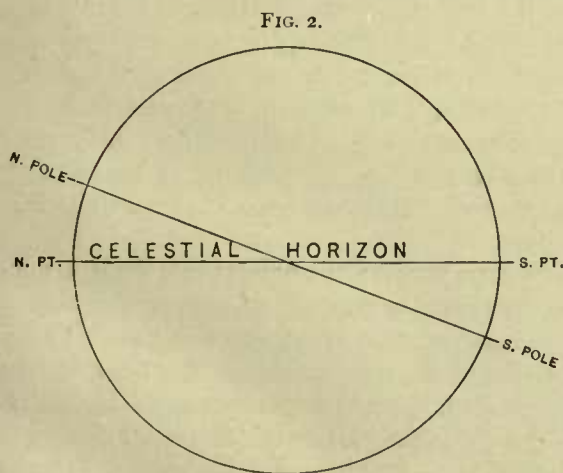
* The student will more easily remember that R. A. corresponds to longitude by recollecting that stars in moving from east to west *ascend* on our right. (*The observer facing north.*)

Therefore the celestial horizon is a great circle, and the point of the sphere over our heads, called the zenith, and that under our feet, called the nadir, are its poles. There are supposed to be circles parallel to the horizon, and others, called vertical circles, running through its poles. The distances measured on the horizon system of circles are vertical distances, called altitude, or horizontal distances, called azimuth.

The horizon system of circles seems to us fixed in space, while the equinoctial system seems to revolve. But no two different places on earth have the same part of the heavens above their horizons at the same time; and, therefore, the measurements D. and R. A., which are the same all over the world, have wider, more abiding value than altitude and azimuth.

There is a very important circle belonging to the horizon system called "the meridian." It differs for places differing in terrestrial longitude, but, when people speak of "the meridian," it is generally understood that they refer to the meridian* of the place in which they live, or of which they are talking. The meridian runs through the zenith and nadir, through the north and south celestial poles, and also through what are called the north and south points of the horizon. These are the points of the horizon which would be reached by a line running north and south from the observer. The meridian divides the heavens into eastern and western hemispheres; but, since the sphere is all the time revolving, the eastern and western hemispheres change in area continually.

20. The distance between the celestial poles equals 180° . The distance between the north and south points



of the horizon also equals 180° . In Fig. 2 the circle represents the meridian. If, from the arc of the circle in

* The student should point to the meridian by revolving his finger. He should also indicate with his finger the various points on it.

Fig. 2, running from the north point through the south point to the south pole, we subtract the distance between the poles, or 180° , we get for remainder the distance from the north pole to the horizon. If from the same arc we subtract the distance from the north point to the south point, also 180° , we get for remainder the distance of the south pole from the horizon. The remainders must be equal, since we subtract equals from the same.

The north pole is, therefore, just as far above the horizon of any place as the south pole is below it. Both distances equal, in degrees, the observer's distance from the earth's equator; or, in other words, his terrestrial latitude.

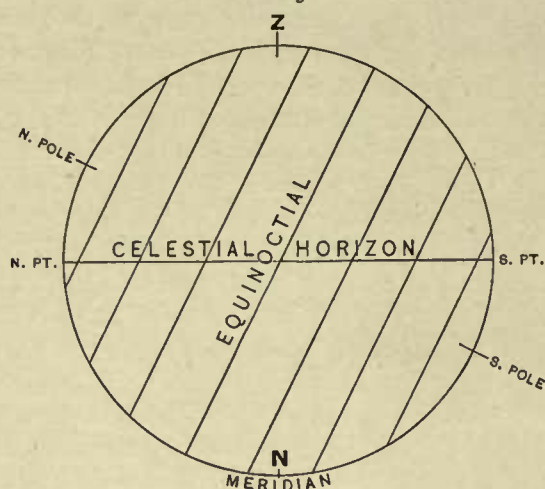
21. If the north point of the horizon left a visible mark on all the points of the celestial sphere which pass through it, it would trace a circle round the north pole of the heavens, since these points must all be at the same distance from the pole. The area within this circle is always visible to us, and therefore it is called the Circle of Perpetual Apparition. A similar circle would be traced by the south point around the south pole; and, as we never see the part of the heavens within this circle, it is called the Circle of Perpetual Disapparition. The radius of these circles is equal to the observer's latitude on earth. As we travel north, these circles grow larger, since the distance of the north point from the pole star increases. At the north pole Polaris is on the zenith (nearly), and the two circles are each a hemisphere. The pole above the horizon is called "the elevated pole"; that below the horizon, "the depressed pole."

22. **The Paths of Stars over the Sky.**—The student is strongly recommended to study, by observation, the diurnal circles in which stars seem to move over the sky. He must see the position of stars or star-groups, first, when they appear above the horizon, and afterward, when they are seen on or near the meridian. He will find that when they are on the meridian they seem to be farther south than at their rising or at their setting. But this is not equally true of all stars. Those that rise far in the northeast, like Vega in the constellation Lyra, and Capella in the constellation Auriga, seem on reaching the meridian to have moved much farther south than those which rise in the east. Finally, the path of those rising in the southeast scarcely seems to curve southward at all.

This *southward* direction of the curve is apparent, not real, and the cause of the appearance is the elevation of one pole above the horizon, the depression of the other below it. This is evident from Fig. 3. This circle shows the eastern hemisphere of the heavens about as it appears in the larger part of the United States.

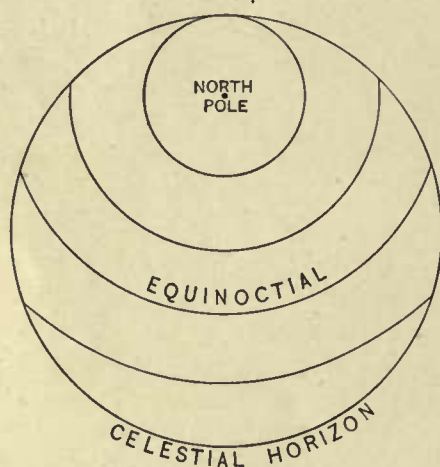
From this same figure it is evident that the circles of the diurnal motion of the stars are very unequally divided by the horizon. This inequality increases as the circles lie farther north. The stars which have a smaller part of their diurnal

FIG. 3.



circles above the horizon seem to move in a less curved path than those a great part of whose diurnal circles lies above the

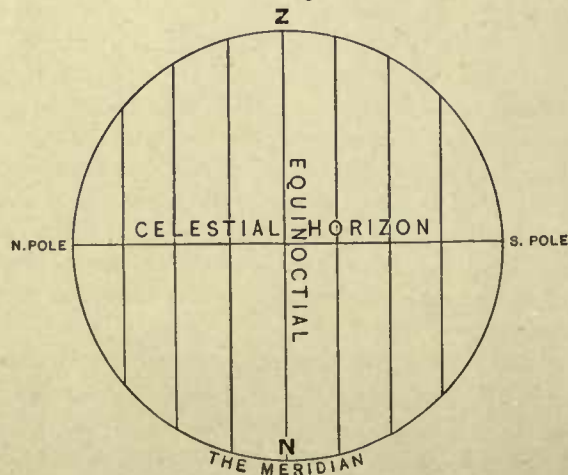
FIG. 4.



horizon. Fig. 4 gives the appearance of these circles on the hemisphere above the horizon.

23. Fig. 5 shows the eastern hemisphere of the heav-

FIG. 5.

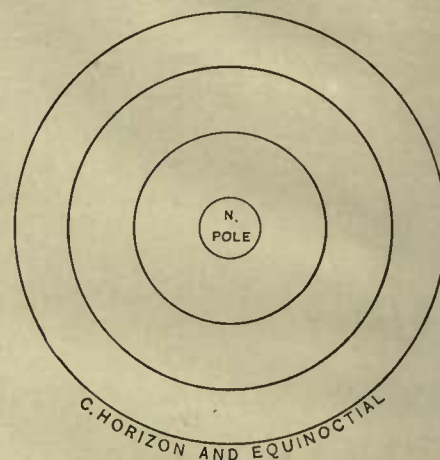


ens to an observer at the equator. The poles are on the horizon, and the equinoctial runs through zenith and nadir. At the equator, the circles in which the stars revolve seem to run directly east and west, with no appearance of curving north or south.

The circle, Fig. 6, exhibits the hemisphere above the horizon at the north pole. There the poles of the heavens are at the zenith and the nadir, and the horizon coincides with the equinoctial. The diurnal circles of the stars lie wholly above or wholly below the horizon. At the north pole no stars are visible but those north of the equinoctial, and they move in circles parallel to the horizon.

South of the equator corresponding conditions exist.

FIG. 6.



CHAPTER III.

ANNUAL MOTIONS OF THE STARS AND SUN, AND HOW TO OBSERVE THEM—HOW TO INTERPRET THEM.

24. **The Annual Motion of the Stars.**—When we observe the diurnal motion of the stars, we take all our observations on the same night, at intervals of one, two, or three hours; but, when we observe the annual motion of the stars, we make our observations at intervals of two or three weeks, and it is necessary always to make them at the same hour of the night, since we thus avoid any confusion from seeing also the diurnal motion of the stars.

In order to observe the annual motion it is necessary to know at least one star-group, so that we can identify it if it changes place. If we know but one, it should be just above the eastern horizon at the hour for observation; and, also, whether the observer knows one or many, it is best for him to make special observation of one situated in that place when he begins. If, after seeing it, he waits two weeks and takes another look, he will find that it is no longer so near the eastern horizon; it is higher up, or farther west. If he looks at it again, after an interval of two or three more weeks, he will find that it seems to have continued its motion west. If,

during six months, he keeps on observing it, at intervals of three or four weeks, it will appear to have crossed the evening sky, and at the end of the six months will have passed out of sight below the western horizon. After about a month he will be able to see it in the morning sky just before light. It will not be far from the eastern horizon, and it will be evident that it has passed from the eastern to the western side of the sun. If he continues, at intervals of a few weeks, to rise before day in the morning and note its position, it will again appear to him to be moving west; and in another six months it will again have disappeared below the western horizon. After this it can be found on the evening sky where he had first seen it, that is, just above the eastern horizon. Thus it would appear to have made a revolution around the earth in a year's time.

25. Though it is best to concentrate special observation on one group, the observer would have seen that all the other groups he knew moved in exactly the same direction and at the same rate of motion. The direction of the annual motion of the stars is precisely like the direction of their diurnal motion. This is very evident if we watch the stars lying near the north pole of the heavens. They seem to make an annual revolution round the pole in precisely the direction in which they make their diurnal revolution. The resemblance between the diurnal and annual motions is so marked that but for one fact we should conclude that they had the same cause, viz., the earth's rotation on her axis. But in watching the diurnal revolution we find at the end of the intervals of observation that the sun must have moved with the stars, since an hour or two has elapsed. On the other hand, in watching the annual motion we make observations of groups at the same hour until they leave the evening for the morning sky, and therefore, after the intervals, the sun can not be in a changed position. Now, we know from experience that an axial rotation makes the sun revolve as well as the stars, and therefore we are forced to think that the annual motion of the stars must be due to some other cause.

26. **Solar and Sidereal Days.**—In watching the diurnal motion of the stars, as described in the last chapter, we usually note their positions both at the beginning and end of a revolution; that is, at the same hour on two successive days. Thus observed, the stars appear to us to be in exactly the same position at the same hour of successive days. But, after the observation described in this chapter, it is evident that this conclusion is not strictly accurate; but the stars in one day make so little more than a revolution that we do not perceive the difference. In two or three weeks the differences accumulate, and the truth becomes evident to the eye.

During a year the stars make one revolution more than the sun.

Let us suppose that at midnight, when we know that the sun is on the meridian below the horizon, we see a star on the meridian above the horizon. At the next midnight this star must be a very, very little west of the meridian. Therefore it must come to the meridian before the sun, which reaches that point at midnight. If, now, we call the intervals between the sun's successive passages over the meridian below the horizon a Solar Day, and the interval between the star's successive passages over the meridian above the horizon a Sidereal Day, it is clear that a solar day is a very little longer than a sidereal day.

27. The student who merely reads about this annual motion of the stars, but does not see it in nature, can not have a practical or respectable knowledge of astronomy. Systematic observations at the same hour for two months, showing that the stars move west while the sun does not, are of the greatest value. The full revolution merely repeats the result of the few weeks' experiments; and, after them, the more general observations, made by any one who looks at the heavens on starry nights, are sufficient to show that the revolution continues. It is, however, well, a year afterward, to take a special look at the star-group in its old place above the western horizon.

28. **The Annual Motion of the Sun.**—The observation of this motion may be begun at any time, but it will be here described as it appears to a person who begins to watch it on September 21st, near the commencement of a school year.

The observer must at sunset go to some convenient place and note first the direction from himself of the setting sun. He will find that the sun is due west of him at sunset on September 21st. He then notes, so that he could remember and identify it, the exact point of the horizon behind which the sun sets. If he observes carefully, he will see some inequality at that point of the horizon which will enable him to fix it in memory. In two or three days he returns at sunset to the same spot, and again notes the point of the horizon behind which the sun disappears. He finds the sun appears to have moved south. If he continues to return and note the sun's positions at intervals of a few days or a week, he will find that it keeps on moving south until a few days before December 22d. For several days before and after December 22d it seems to set at exactly the same point of the horizon. This is usually expressed by saying that the sun "becomes stationary" about December 22d. Some days after that date it is again seen moving upon the horizon, but it is found going north. The sun, after

this, keeps on moving northward, and on March 21st is again due west at sunset. If, after this, the observer takes a look at convenient intervals, he will see the sun farther and farther north until a few days before and after June 22d, when it again appears stationary on the horizon. The observer should take note that the sun is northwest of him on June 22d. When the sun again begins to move, the direction of the motion is southward, and this continues until September 21st, when the sun is again due west at sunset. Thus at the beginning and end of a year we find the sun at the same point of the horizon and moving in the same direction.

29. If, in the manner described above, we watched the sun at his rising above the eastern horizon, we should see precisely the same phenomena of motion north and south, taking place at exactly the same times. If the sun's positions be noted at midday, this north and south motion can be detected, but it requires a much longer interval of time to perceive it, since we have no visible line like the horizon to measure it. If we look at the sun (through a thin silk umbrella)* on December 22d, and again on June 22d, the variation in position from south to north is very evident. The student should certainly look at it thus at midday June 22d, and note that it is even then not quite vertical. It is never vertical in the United States. On June 22d it is vertical at places on the Tropic of Cancer, and on December 22d at places on the Tropic of Capricorn. This is the meaning of those circles.

30. Probably many students have some vague recollection of something like the motions of the sun here described. These very indefinite remembrances are not worth much. The student should make special and systematic observations. He should see part at least of the motion north and the motion south; he should see the sun through at least one stationary period; he should see it on either March 20th or September 21st when due west; and he should, on June 22d and December 22d, note its midday positions (through an umbrella). The student who begins observation September 21st, and keeps it up until February, gains a realizing idea of the sun's motions, and sees all that is important except its position on June 22d.

But those persons who are satisfied with reading about this motion in a book, without making any observations, can have no satisfactory or even respectable knowledge of astronomy.

31. **The Sun's Motion among the Stars.**—We do not see the stars when we see the sun, and we attribute this fact to his blinding brilliancy. Our reason, aided by

* But the student must be very careful never to look at the sun at midday with unprotected eyes. It is in the highest degree dangerous.

our observation of them, satisfies us that they must be in the heavens when the sun is, and that, if we could see them when we see him, we should see him against the background of some star-group familiar to those who know the heavens well. Also, since the stars and sun have each a different motion, it is clear to our reason that the sun would not always be in the same constellation. If the sun, like a meteor, left a track of light behind him, it would trace some kind of path among the stars.

32. The early astronomers long ago found a way of tracing among the stars this line, or path of the sun. Their process for it is easily understood, but it would divert us too much from our present subject to describe it here. Astronomers tell us that if we could see the stars when we see the sun, we should always see him somewhere on a great circle of the celestial sphere passing through the constellations Aries, Taurus, Gemini, Cancer, Leo, Virgo, Libra, Scorpio, Sagittarius, Capricornus, Aquarius, and Pisces. This circle is called "the Ecliptic," and it is traced on the maps attached to this volume. If we could see the sun and stars together at midday, we should, in the course of a year, see him successively on all the points of this circle. Since the stars move west, and the sun sometimes moves north and sometimes south, he would appear to fall back, sometimes northeast, sometimes southeast. This great circle intersects the equinoctial at an angle of $23\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$. A zone or belt of the heavens extending 8° on each side of it is called the Zodiac; and so the constellations Aries, Taurus, etc., are called the Zodiacal Constellations.

33. Now, although the student is indebted to astronomers for tracing this circle with exactness, and for telling us where the sun is in it on any day, any observer can see in the heavens a good deal to confirm their testimony. Unless he sees these things for himself, what he learns from books will not be a knowledge of real objects that he knows by sight, and thus it does not make him look at the phenomena in the heavens with intelligence. In the first place, by learning the zodiacal constellations, he sees that they extend in a ring around the sphere. Besides this, he will always find one of them at dark not far from the point where the sun sets. By watching it, the observer sees where it sets, and he will also perceive that from evening to evening it sets earlier. Finally, it becomes invisible; and he has reason to think this is because it sets nearly *when* the sun does, and thus is obscured by his light. About that time the sun sets *where* it was seen to set. Thus, when astronomers show us the line of the ecliptic in that star-group, and tell us exactly when the sun sets at each point of it, we can accept their statements with intelligence.

34. But, also, astronomers tell us that a line drawn from the center of the sun through the center of the earth would always pass through the ecliptic. Thus we are always passing between the sun and some constellation of the zodiac. We can roughly test this. If it is true, one of these star-groups must always be on the eastern horizon at sunset, and in the same direction from us that we are from the sun. That is, if we are northeast from the sun, it must be northeast from us, etc. This constellation must be just above the eastern horizon at dark when the sun is just below the western horizon. Now, we always find one of the zodiacal star-groups in just this place, and in such a direction from us that we seem to be in line between it and the sun. Also, if we sit up until midnight, when the sun is beneath us, we see this constellation on the meridian above the horizon.*

35. **The Earth the Mover.**†—Let us suppose that, on June 22d, the student began to note the constellations seen above the eastern horizon at dark. In June Sagittarius is there. The earth is passing between the sun and Sagittarius. If occasional observations at dark were kept up until December 22d, the student would see one after another, just above the eastern horizon, Capricornus, Aquarius, Pisces, Aries, Taurus, and Gemini. The earth passes between the sun and each one

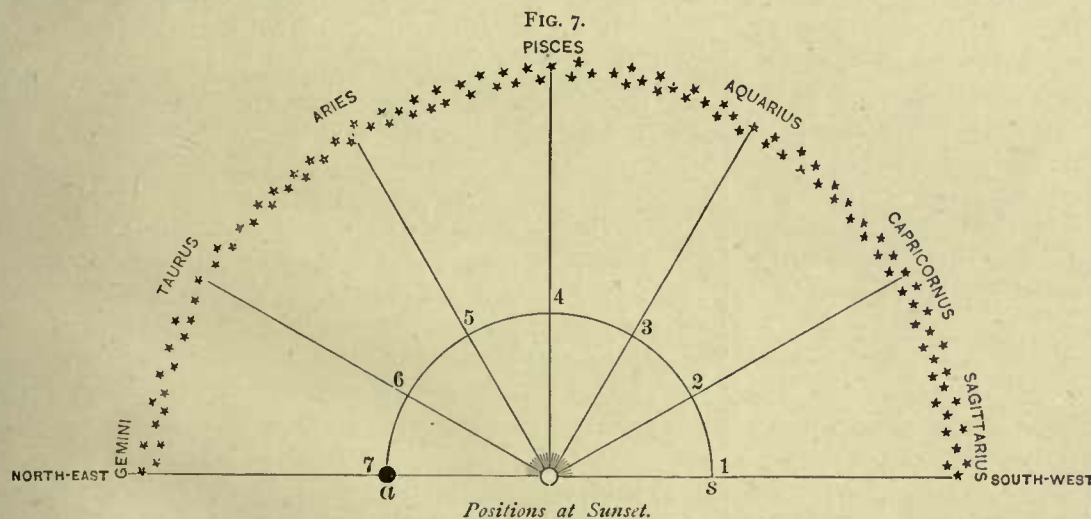
set. Sagittarius would have disappeared nearly a month earlier, and the student who had watched it would have reason to believe that it was far southwest of the sun.

The observer would recall that in June he passed between Sagittarius and the sun, and he would know in December that Sagittarius was west of the sun at dark. It would be clear that something had moved to cause this change of relative position. Remembering what he had seen during six months, he would have a very strong impression that the sun and stars had moved.

36. Let us see whether a motion of the earth could account for the changes of position. If the sun and stars did not move from June to December, then the earth must in June have been at a point which the observer at sunset in December calls "west of the sun," and the earth must have moved northeast from June to December, since in December she is at sunset northeast from the sun. Let the student look at the diagram (Fig. 7). If the earth, starting from *s*, had moved through all the positions to *a*, she would have passed in succession between the sun and Sagittarius, Capricornus, Aquarius, Pisces, Aries, Taurus, and Gemini. She would also have made a half-revolution round the sun. If the earth moves, she carries the observer along without exertion on his part, and without any noise, jolting, or jarring whatever. Our experience of motion on earth shows that when we

are thus moved, we always get the impression that we are at rest, and that surrounding objects are in motion.

Thus, the supposition that the earth is the mover accounts for the apparent motion of the stars just as well as if we supposed them to be the real movers. It accounts for it no better, as far as the student now knows the facts; but, further on, the student will learn some facts which can be much better accounted for by supposing



in succession. From the eastern horizon they would move west, and on December 22d at dark, the student would see them all (except Sagittarius) extending in line from northeast to southwest, or to where the sun had

set. That the earth moves than by supposing that she is at rest.

37. Let us now see if the earth's motion will account for the behavior of the sun. There are two things to explain: First, that the sun does not appear to make an annual revolution around the earth with the stars. Second, that the sun moves south from June to December. The student must here note that the motion of the sun north and south is a motion in the directions of the earth's axis, which points north and south.

* This observation is very far from giving *exact* knowledge; but without it the study of astronomy is not a knowledge of real objects which the student can see, but of objects which for the student exist only in imagination.

† The student should recite this section, pointing to the parts of the heavens mentioned.

It has already been noticed that, if the earth is the mover, she must move northeast from June to December; for, when we see the heavens at dark on December 22d, we see plainly that her December position, between Gemini and the sun, is northeast of her June position, between Sagittarius and the sun. From June to December, the sun's annual motion is from north to south. Thus the earth, if she is the mover, travels north while the sun appears to travel south.

We must again remember our experience of motion on the earth. If we move in any direction, surrounding objects seem to move in the opposite direction. If the motion is entirely without exertion on our part, without jolting, jarring, or noise, we appear to ourselves to be at rest and other objects seem to be the movers. Thus it seems as if the earth's motion might be the cause of the sun's apparent motion south from June to December.

38. But since the earth's supposed motion is a revolution round the sun, this matter will be made much clearer by some experiments.

Let the student draw a circle on level ground, and get an assistant of just his own height to stand at the center while he walks round this circle to the right. His head moves in a circle round his assistant's head as a center. Let the walker note: (1) That an object outside the circle, as a tree for example, comes into view on his right, gradually gets round to his left, disappears, and finally reappears on his right. Thus this object apparently revolves round him in a direction contrary to that of his own revolution round the center, but in the same time. Thus, objects outside the circle appear to revolve round the walker. (2) The object at the center does not appear to revolve round the walker. Thus it is evident that the theory of the earth's revolution round the sun perfectly accounts for the fact that the stars have, the sun has not, an apparent annual revolution round the earth.

The axial rotation was omitted in this experiment to avoid confusion, but the walker's axis is a vertical line through his body, and its directions are up and down. But the student should note (3) that the head at the center does not move up and down. Therefore, this experiment does not account for the sun's motion south and north, or motion in the directions of the earth's axis.

39. If, now, a circle is drawn, not on level ground, but on some rather steep hill-side, crossed by a road, and thus graded into an inclined plane, the observer will see a variation in his experiment. As he ascends the hill, the head at the center gets lower than his head; and as he descends, the head gets higher. These are motions up and down, and, therefore, motions in the direction of the axis, which is vertical in this case as in the other. Of

course the walker is under no illusion that the head at the center really moves, but if the walker were moved without exertion, noise, jolt, or jar, there would be illusion.

When the experiment is performed thus, we see that we can account for the sun's north-south motion, if we can prove that the earth's revolution is similar to that on the hill-side. Let us analyze the difference in the experiments. In both cases the axis is vertical. Where the ground is level and the plane of the circle is horizontal, the vertical line of the axis is perpendicular to the plane of the circle. But where the circle is not horizontal, the vertical line of the axis is inclined to the plane of the circle. Almost everybody remembers that in going uphill we incline toward the surface of the ground before us, though our position is vertical.*

Now the student has probably already been told that the earth's axis is inclined to the plane of her orbit. The earth's path round the sun is called her orbit. But this statement about the earth's orbit gives no real and practical knowledge of astronomy, *unless the student notes the facts before his eyes on the heavens which prove it.*

40. If he knows and watches the zodiacal constellations, as described, and can trace the ecliptic, he has some real idea what astronomers mean when they say that the earth moves round the sun, between the sun and the ecliptic, or on lines extending from the sun to the points of the ecliptic. A circle is a plane figure, and therefore the earth's orbit, or path round the sun, is in the plane of the ecliptic.

The celestial axis is a line joining the celestial poles. It passes through the center of the ecliptic and all great circles of the celestial sphere. The earth's axis also runs north and south, and passes through the earth's orbit in the same plane. Two lines running in the same direction must make the same angle with the same plane. The following experiment will show how we learn that the celestial axis is not perpendicular to the plane of the ecliptic: Let the student cut, from rather stiff paper, a circle of about six inches in diameter. Let him insert, through the exact center, a knitting-needle or straight straw. Let him then note (1) that when the straw is held perpendicular to the surface of the paper, the end, or extremity, of the straw is at equal distances from all points of the circumference; (2) when the straw is held

* These and similar experiments should actually be performed in the presence of the teacher, who should ask questions, making sure each student perceives the exact point each experiment is designed to show. These experiments are not striking, as are many which are utterly useless for investigation, but, if the teacher can set his pupils to thinking, he will find these experiments better than mere shows. If the hill-side experiment must be imagined, not performed, there should be many questions to aid imagination. A student who stands on an inclined cellar-door or plank shows the inclination of the vertical body to the plane on which he stands.

inclined to the plane of the paper, its end is at unequal distances from the points of the circumference.

Now the student can see the circle of the ecliptic on the heavens, and also the pole or end of the axis, though he can not see the plane or the axis. Thus he can see that different points on the circle are at unequal distances from the pole. Therefore the axis of the celestial sphere is inclined to the plane of the ecliptic, and the earth's axis is not perpendicular to the plane of her orbit.

Thus the earth's revolution around the sun resembles the walker's revolution round the circle on the hill-side. Therefore, we can account for the facts (1) that the sun does not, like the stars, make an annual revolution round the earth; (2) that the sun moves north and south. When the earth moves southeast, the sun moves not northwest, but north, because east and west are mere directions of revolution, and the sun makes no annual revolution round the earth.

It is well for the student to know how these motions would appear to a person who could stand off and see them. To illustrate them, a small, cheap globe may be used, which is found in nearly all primary schools. It is on a wire foot. It must be placed on the foot on a table, and then moved slowly round the table without rotation on its axis. The student notes very carefully that every particle moves in a horizontal circle or plane, parallel to the surface of the table. The axis is seen to be inclined to this plane. Afterward the globe must remain in one place on the table, and it must be slowly revolved on its axis. The student here notes carefully that every revolving particle keeps at the same distance from the pole, precisely. Thus the axis is perpendicular to the plane of this motion. This may be further shown by taking up the globe and holding it so that the axis is vertical, and then revolving. The student notes that the particles all move in horizontal circles when the axis is vertical.

Finally, when the student perfectly understands the position of the axis in regard to the planes of the motion, the two motions may be performed together on the table. The globe may be moved round the table and revolved also, *keeping the line of the axis all the time extended in the same direction*, just as the earth's axis always points north and south.

41. One thing remains to be accounted for in regard to the stars. The earth's motion north from June to December did not make the stars appear to move south, as it made the sun. In the experiment on the hill-side (39), when the walker ascends, not merely does the head at the center seem to go down, but surrounding objects seem to descend. But those near at hand seem to move farther than those at a distance. Let the student move in a straight line on level ground, where he can see near and distant objects. All seem to move in a direction contrary to that in which he moves; but the less remote objects move much farther than distant ones. Very distant hills do not seem to move at all. This makes ob-

jects near at hand seem to move over remote ones as a background.

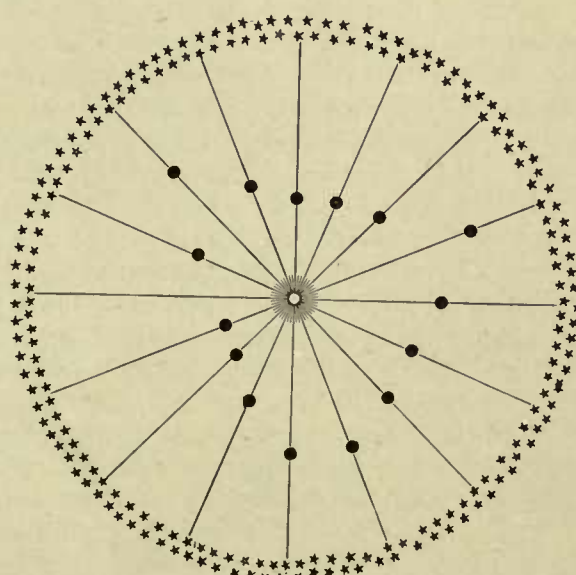
Thus the fact that the sun moves north or south, and the stars do not, can be accounted for by supposing that the stars are at an enormous distance, while the sun is much nearer to us. This also accounts for the fact that the stars do not seem to change place in regard to each other, but move as if painted on the canvas of a panorama.

42. We have discussed the aspect of the zodiac on the heavens at sunset, December 22d. Astronomers tell us that the ecliptic on the heavens at sunset always shows the direction in which the earth has moved during the previous six months. It is only a little altered at dark. If we observe for any six months, we find the earth successively between the sun and each zodiacal constellation seen on the heavens at dark at the close of the time; also, when the sun has moved north for six months, the ecliptic extends southeast from him at dark, and when he has moved south the ecliptic extends northeast. Thus the direction of the earth's motion is always contrary to the direction of the sun's motion, and thus accounts for it.

It is wholly impossible for the student to have a practical knowledge of astronomy unless he knows the ecliptic in nature, and understands what its various positions mean. A littler further on there will be found directions for its observation, and a discussion of its chief aspects.

43. If the earth's center moves round the sun on lines extending from him to the various points of the ecliptic,

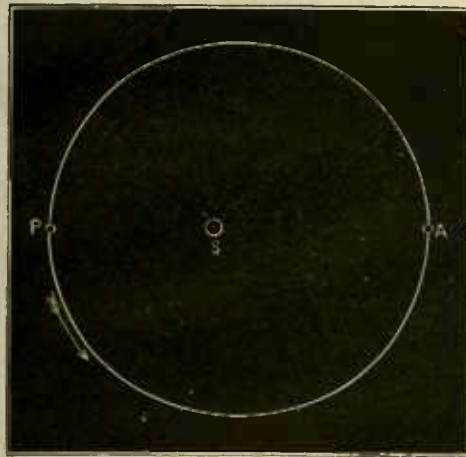
FIG. 8.



it is clear that it moves all in the same plane, since a circle is a plane figure. Now, from Fig. 8 it is evident

distance between two points of the ellipse is called its minor axis. The eccentricity of an ellipse will perhaps be best understood by saying that it is the degree in which the ellipse differs from a circle. An ellipse is drawn by fastening two ends of a string to paper firmly secured to a board, and by then placing the point of a pencil against the loop and revolving it. (See Fig. 9.) The ellipse in which the earth moves can hardly be distinguished from a circle. The sun is at one of the foci. (See Figs. 10 and 11.)

FIG. 11.

*The Earth's Orbit.*

47. **The Sun and the Ecliptic.**—We know, from the western motion of the stars, that the sun falls back among them. Neither sun nor stars really move. They only appear to change position in regard to each other in consequence of the earth's motion. This is called the motion of the sun in the ecliptic. When the stars seem to change place in regard to the horizon, it is called the motion of the stars. In a year the sun falls back completely around the ecliptic, and this is called the sun's revolution on the ecliptic. In speaking of this motion, we can say that the sun moves northeast or southeast on the ecliptic, since it is a revolution. But there is no appearance whatever of an annual revolution of the sun *round the earth*, and so we speak of his motion on the horizon as a motion north or south.

Let us suppose that it is sunset, and that a line is drawn through the earth and the sun to the stars beyond both. It would reach points of the ecliptic 180° apart. We should see the sun at the western end of the line, and, if there were an observer at the sun, he would see us at the eastern end of the same line. The two positions, that of the sun as seen by an observer at the earth, and that of the earth as seen by an observer at the sun, would always be 180° apart. The observer at the sun would seem to see the earth move on the ecliptic. Since the earth and the sun appear to travel round the same cir-

cle, keeping always 180° apart, their rates of motion must be exactly the same at every moment, even if the earth's rate varies. Thus the falling back of the sun upon the ecliptic is always an exact measure of the earth's motion in her orbit.

The daily and annual motion of the sun go on together. He revolves daily with the sphere, and also moves among the stars on the sphere. This can be illustrated by the moon, which revolves daily with the sphere, rising and setting, and also moving among the stars.

48. The sun's movement on the ecliptic measures our year, and for this reason that circle is divided off in degrees and used for celestial measurements. Circles are imagined both parallel and perpendicular to the ecliptic. Distances from the ecliptic are called Celestial Latitude. Celestial Longitude is distance measured east on the ecliptic from the intersection of the ecliptic and equinoctial in Pisces. (See Map III.) Right ascension is reckoned on the equinoctial east from the same point. On the earth longitude is counted both east and west to 180° , but on the heavens right ascension and longitude are reckoned east only, to 360° .*

Thus there are three systems of circles for celestial measurement, viz., the Horizon System, the Equinoctial System, and the Ecliptic System. All have their uses.

49. The extreme southern point of the ecliptic in Sagittarius (see map) is reached by the sun on December 22d. Both the time and the place on the heavens are called the Winter Solstice. The sun reaches the extreme northern point of the ecliptic in Gemini (see map) on June 22d. The time and the place are each called the Summer Solstice.

Since the sun is due west at sunset on March 20th and September 21st, he must then cross the equinoctial, which intersects the east and west points of the horizon. The sun crosses in Pisces (see map) on March 20th, and the time and the place are each called the Vernal Equinox. The sun crosses in Virgo September 21st, and the time and the place are each called the Autumnal Equinox.

A great circle of the Equinoctial System passes through the poles and the equinoctial points of the ecliptic. It is called the Equinoctial Colure. Another passes through the poles and the solstitial points, and is called the Solstitial Colure. Both are represented on the maps.

50. **Observation of the Ecliptic.**—It is impossible to have a practical knowledge of astronomy without knowing the ecliptic in nature. It is constantly unrolled be-

* Since declination and right ascension, like terrestrial latitude and longitude, measure distances north and south, east and west, it would have seemed more appropriate to call them latitude and longitude. But names in use can not easily be changed, and the very incongruity fixes in memory the use of the terms.

fore us. Maps and globes aid us in preparing for intelligent observation, but it would be very absurd to substitute a knowledge of these for intelligent acquaintance with the circle in nature. (See "Talks with Observers," p. 81).

The ecliptic has four chief aspects: At sunset on June 22d it extends from northwest to southeast, and at sunset on December 22d it stretches from southwest to northeast. Of course, we can not see this at sunset. But, at different times, these aspects are seen at all hours of the night. When they are visible, Sagittarius is always on one side of the horizon, Gemini on the other. Maps III and IV do not show the exact aspect for this season.

At sunset, March 21st, the ecliptic extends nearly over our heads across the sky, and at sunset, September 21st, it makes a long curve toward the southern point of the horizon. Maps I and II show exactly these aspects with Pisces and Virgo on the horizon. Like the two other aspects, these are, at different times, seen at all hours of the night. In observing them the student must particularly note that, on March 21st, the ecliptic is very nearly perpendicular to the horizon, and that it is very much inclined to the horizon on September 21st. When these aspects are seen, Pisces and Virgo are always on the horizon.

About a month before the time of the solstices and equinoxes, there is a favorable opportunity for observing the chief aspects at a convenient hour.

It is of great aid, in giving definiteness to the student's ideas, if he can see the ecliptic traced, in connection with the equinoctial system of circles, on a revolving globe. The small globe spoken of in the Introduction will answer the purpose.

Let the student turn to Map II. It shows that, during the six months before September 21st, the earth moves first southeast, then east, then northeast. Observation shows that at that time the sun moves on the horizon, first north, then appears stationary, then moves south. Now, when the sun appears stationary, the earth has certainly ceased to move north or south. But, since the stars continue to move west, the earth is not at rest. She must move due east. Also, the sun must continue to fall back on the ecliptic if the stars continue to move west. He must move due east. At June 22d, when the sun is stationary, the earth is in Sagittarius. The student can see on Map II that the course of the ecliptic through Sagittarius is nearly east and west. The sun at that time is in Gemini, and Map I shows that the ecliptic also runs nearly east and west through Gemini.

NOTE.—The following sections should be omitted, unless the student's knowledge of geometry, as taught in all high-schools, is thorough. Where it is, the student is perfectly prepared to understand what follows, with due study, and, unless the time is too short, it ought not to be omitted. If the student is to know the ecliptic in the heavens, he ought to understand how it is traced. The student should point in reciting.

51. How the Sun's Motion among the Stars is measured.—The meridian of any place is a great circle passing through its poles on the heavens, its zenith, its nadir, and the north and south points of its horizon. It revolves with the earth around her axis. We know the exact time of a revolution, the distance (360°), and therefore the rate of motion. Therefore in a given time we can tell exactly how far in degrees the meridian has moved. By observation we learn the interval of time between two successive appearances of the sun on the meridian, and we can tell the distance in degrees through which the meridian has passed in the interval. It is always more than 360° , for while the meridian revolved back to the point where the sun was, the sun moved east on the ecliptic, and the meridian must revolve farther to catch up with the sun. Subtracting 360° from the whole distance, we get the number of degrees the sun traveled east among the stars in a solar day.

When the sun is on the meridian above our heads, we can measure his distance in degrees from the south point of the horizon with an instrument for measuring angles. By finding this distance daily, we can detect his motion north or south. By adding to this distance the distance of the south point of the horizon from the celestial south pole, or the observer's latitude, we get the sun's distance from the south pole.

52. The Sun's Path shown to be a Great Circle.—Let the student examine the small globe used in 40 and note the following facts: (1) The equator, ecliptic, and meridians, each one, divide the surface of the globe into equal parts, and therefore they are great circles of the sphere. (2) All great circles bisect each other. (3) No small circle (as a parallel) bisects a great circle.

The meridian of any place is a great circle. The ecliptic is always crossing it at two points: * one above, one below the horizon. If the sum of the distances of these two points from the south pole always equals 180° , the sun's path bisects the meridian and must be a great circle. Now, the point below is 180° east of the point above; and, therefore, when the sun, starting from the point above, travels east 180° , he will be on the point now below. But astronomers have a great many times measured on the meridian the sun's two distances from the south pole at points of his path 180° east from each other, and the sum of these distances always equals 180° . Therefore the meridian, revolving over the ecliptic, is always bisected by it, and the ecliptic must be a great circle.

53. The Ecliptic traced among the Stars.—The meridian of any place is always crossed by the ecliptic above and below the horizon, and the arc of the meridian between these intersections equals 180° , since the ecliptic is a great circle. When the sun is on the meridian at noon, we can find the distance of the intersection above, from the south pole. (See 51.) Subtracting this from 180° , we get the distance from the south pole of the intersection below. In half the time of the earth's rotation, the intersection which was below is on the meridian above. We know its distance from the south pole, and subtract-

* The student who knows the ecliptic in nature has seen this.

ing from this the number of degrees measuring the terrestrial latitude, we get the distance of this intersection from the south point of the horizon. Measuring this ascertained distance north from the south point, we find the ecliptic point, and, as the stars are then visible, we have found it among the stars. Other points can be found in the same way.

CHAPTER IV.

INEQUALITY OF DAYS AND NIGHTS—THE SEASONS—THE
PRECESSION OF THE EQUINOXES—TIME.

54. **Inequality of Days and Nights.**—The sun is at his highest northern position on June 22d, and in the United States the days are then at their greatest length : the nights at their shortest. As he moves south, the days grow shorter and the nights longer ; but they do not become equal until September 21st, when the sun at sunset is due west, just at the point where the equinoctial cuts the horizon. Finally, on December 22d, he has reached his extreme southern position, $23\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ south of the equinoctial. The days are then at their shortest, the nights at their longest. When he again begins his annual journey north, the days increase in length ; the nights decrease until March 21st, when the sun at sunset is again due west of us. He has again reached the equinoctial, and the days again exactly equal the nights. After that the days are longer than the nights, and finally, on June 22d, he reaches again the parallel of $23\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ north.

As we travel north, the times of the year for long and short days and days equal to nights do not change ; but the inequality of days and nights increases until we reach the pole, where they become equal by the night and day each becoming six months long.

If we travel south, the inequality decreases, until at the equator days and nights are equal. If we continue our journey south of the equator, we shall find the days begin to differ in length as they do in the northern hemisphere, only the times are reversed; the long days coming in December, the long nights in June.*

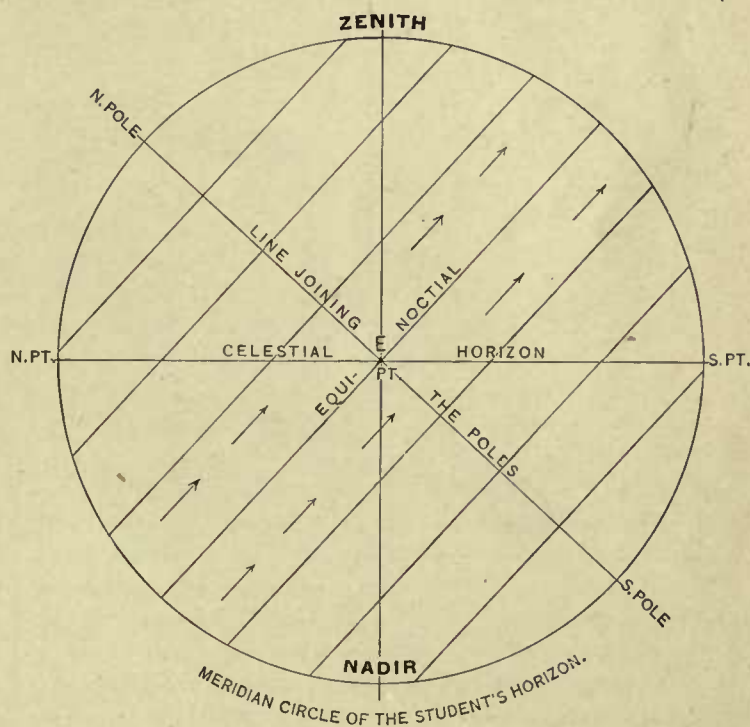
55. In order to understand the precise connection of these phenomena with the sun's motions, the student must remember that the sun, in his apparent journey

* The inequality of days and nights is here explained by arcs of circles on the celestial sphere, because the student sees this sphere and the motions of the sun and stars on it, and thus has some personal knowledge of the facts on which the explanation is based. It corresponds to facts he sees in nature. If we draw a figure of the earth with the light and shadow, he can not compare it with nature. He sees the connection between the facts and the conclusion, but he takes the facts solely on the authority of a book.

north and south, also makes at the same time apparent diurnal revolutions around the earth. If we think of the sun's daily revolution and his advance north or south as one motion, his whole path seems to be a spiral winding round the earth. But the advance is so slow that, during a whole revolution, the sun is at nearly the same distance from the celestial pole; and, for the purposes of our present explanation, we may regard him as making his diurnal revolutions on the equinoctial and on circles parallel to it. The parallels of that great circle are called *diurnal* circles, because the stars make their diurnal revolutions on those parallels. At night, the sun revolves on that part of a diurnal circle which lies below the horizon; during the day he revolves on the portion of the circle lying above the horizon. We must try to compare the two parts of the same circle, one above and one below the horizon.

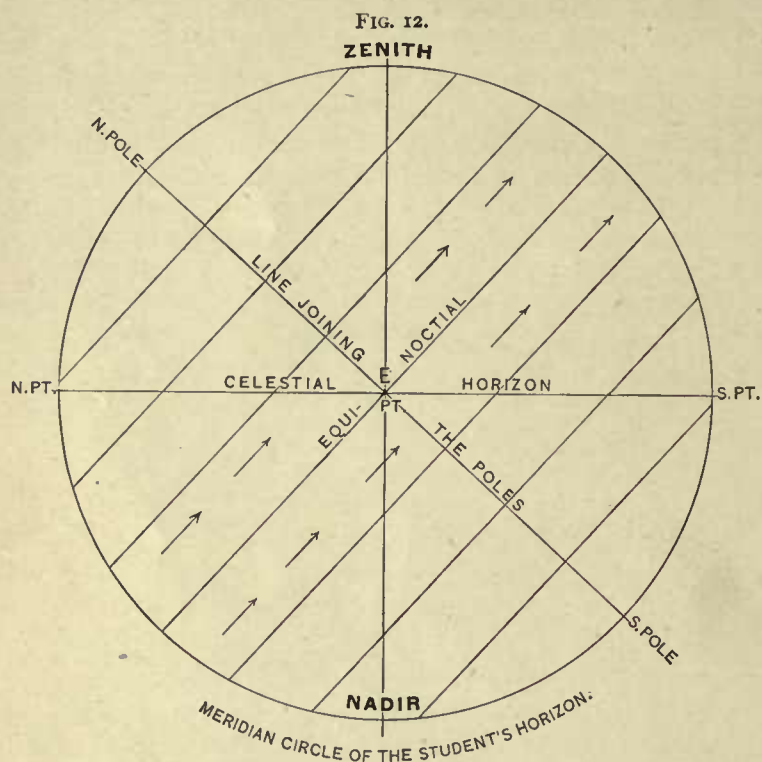
56. We must draw a diagram of the eastern hemisphere of the student's own sky. The circle drawn be-

FIG. 12.



low, Fig. 12, is made from facts, every one of which is perfectly well known to him, and he is invited to consider all the lines in the order in which they were drawn, and attest the correctness of the representation. But he must understand that it is a diagram, *not* a picture. The heavens are in every place divided into eastern and western hemispheres by the meridian of the place, a great circle passing through zenith and nadir,

north and south poles, and the north and south points of the horizon. The eastern hemisphere of the student's sky is bounded by this great circle, the meridian; therefore we must first draw a circle. And this eastern hemisphere is divided into two equal parts, the visible part and the invisible part, by a line called the horizon. Therefore, we draw a horizontal line across the circle. The horizon intersects the meridian on the left in the north point; on the right, in the south point (observer facing east). The point of the horizon half-way between the north and south points is called the east point. We



mark all these points on the diagram. The north pole is on the meridian above the north point. We shall put it at about 40° above the north point, because in a large part of the United States the altitude of the pole does not differ greatly from 40° . The south pole is on the meridian at the same distance below the south point of the horizon, so we draw it there. The celestial sphere has on it a great circle, the equinoctial, which is at every point on it half-way between the poles. It of course crosses the eastern hemisphere of the student's sky, and also the meridian. It must cross the meridian at points half-way between the poles. These points are found, and a line is drawn between them. It will be found to cross the horizon in the east point. Other circles cross the sphere parallel to the equinoctial. These are the diurnal circles, and, as we have the equinoctial, it is easy to draw some circles parallel to it.

The student probably says just here, "But the part of the eastern hemisphere which I see in nature is concave, and this looks flat." That is to say, the diagram is not a picture. It lacks perspective. The author did not want a picture, because perspective depends on illusion. It would alter the proportion between the parts of the diurnal circles lying above and below the horizon, and that proportion is the very thing we wish to know. The diagram shows this more truly than a picture would.

The sun is on the meridian below the horizon at midnight. He is on the meridian above the horizon at midday. He therefore crosses the eastern hemisphere between midnight and midday. We will draw arrows, indicating the direction in which he crosses it. We, of course, see only half of his daily revolution, on this eastern hemisphere of the heavens. But it is evident that the other half, on the western hemisphere, would correspond exactly with this. The period between sunrise and noon when the sun is on the meridian above us, a period which the sun passes in the eastern hemisphere, is exactly equal to the period between noon and sunset, which the sun passes in the western hemisphere. Therefore, it is only necessary to study one of the hemispheres. We will now discuss the diagram.

In March and September the sun is due east from us at sunrise, or at the east point of the horizon. He is on the equinoctial, and must make his diurnal revolution with it. On the diagram the portion of the equinoctial situated on the eastern hemisphere is divided into equal parts by the horizon. From midnight to midday the sun would evidently be just half his time above the horizon. This accounts for the fact that on March 20th and September 21st the nights and days are equal.

From March to September the sun is seen, at sunrise, north of the east point of the horizon, and must therefore make his daily revolution on circles lying north of the equinoctial. The diagram shows that less than half of each circle north of the equinoctial lies below the horizon. The sun, in traveling on them, would be above the horizon more than half the time. This accounts for the fact that, from March to September, the days are longer than the nights. The inequality between the parts of the circles lying above and below the horizon is greatest in those circles lying farthest north. We should therefore expect the inequality between days and nights to be greatest when the sun has reached his extreme northern position. This is true. The longest day comes on June 22d, and after that the sun again moves south.

From September to March we find the sun at sun-

rise south of the east point. The nights are longer than the days. The sun now makes his diurnal revolution on circles lying south of the equinoctial. On looking at our diagram of the eastern hemisphere, we find that more than half of each one of these circles must lie below the horizon. This accounts for the long days and short nights from March to September. The division of the circles on the diagram is more unequal as they are situated farther south. This is evidently the reason why the shortest day, December 22d, comes when the sun has reached his extreme southern position.

The cause of the inequality of days and nights is evidently—1. The sun's north and south motion. 2. The unequal parts into which the diurnal circles are divided by a horizon which does not pass through the celestial poles.

57. Since all the people living on the terrestrial parallel of 40° north latitude have their poles 40° above the horizon, it is clear that this diagram would represent the eastern hemisphere of the sky for all of them. Our antipodes, or the people on the opposite side of the globe, see, at any time, the part of the celestial sphere invisible to us. That is represented by the part of the diagram below the horizon. The antipodes of all the people living in 40° north latitude live in 40° south latitude. Therefore, the lower part of this diagram represents the visible part of this hemisphere to the people on the terrestrial parallel of 40° south latitude. They would call this the "western hemisphere," but north and south on it are the same directions to them and to us. It is clear, from an examination of the diagram, why they have their long days when the sun is at the south, their short days when he is at the north. It is because their daytime comes when their antipodes have night.

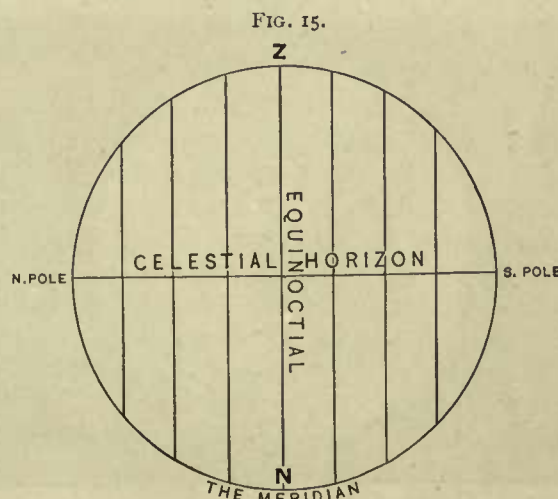
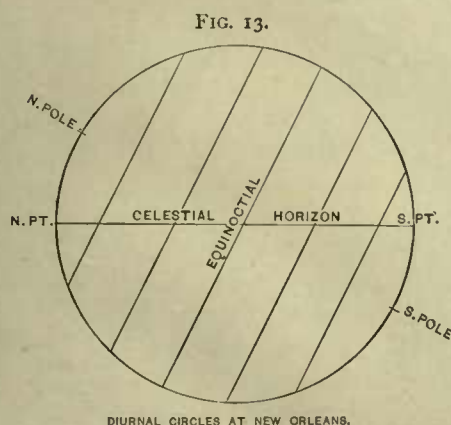
58. It remains to account for the fact that the inequality of days and nights increases as we move toward the poles, and decreases as we approach the equator. The two circles, Figs. 13 and 14, show the eastern hemisphere of the heavens at Quebec and at New Orleans. In drawing these diagrams, the change in the height of the poles made it necessary to alter the position of the equinoctial (which is half-way between the poles), and therefore of the diurnal

circles. The student remembers that the equinoctial intersects the meridian midway between the north and south poles. The greater elevation of the pole at Quebec makes the equinoctial and other diurnal circles more oblique to the horizon, which therefore divides them into more unequal parts, thus increasing the inequality of days and nights.

On the other hand, at New Orleans, the depression of the pole (in comparison with its positions in latitudes 40° , 45°) makes the equinoctial and diurnal circles more nearly perpendicular to the horizon. The two parts of the diurnal circles are less unequal than in Quebec, and therefore days and nights are more nearly equal in New Orleans.

59. The student must take note that in all three of the diagrams the equinoctial is cut into equal parts by the horizon. The celestial horizon is everywhere a great circle of the celestial sphere. Great circles of the same sphere always bisect each other.* Therefore, the equinoctial is in every place divided by the horizon into equal parts. For this reason, whenever the sun makes his daily journey on the equinoctial, as in March and September, days and nights are equal all over the world.

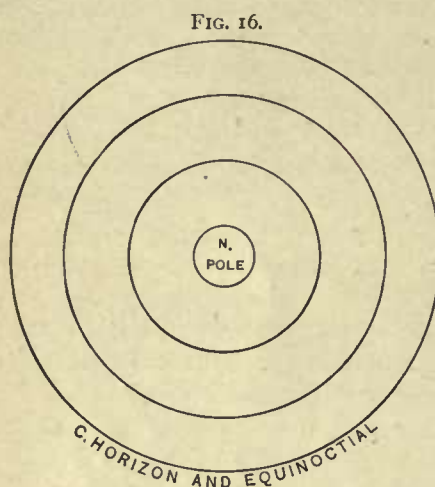
60. The diagram (Fig. 15) shows the eastern hemisphere.



* The student may prove this with the small terrestrial globe. A great circle of a sphere divides its surface in half. The student can not pass a thread round the globe, so as to divide its surface in half, without thereby bisecting the equinoctial, ecliptic (so called), and meridian circles.

sphere of the sky at the equator. Here the poles are on the horizon, and the equinoctial, which intersects the meridian half-way between them, must intersect it in the zenith and nadir. So the equinoctial, and therefore all the diurnal circles, are perpendicular to the horizon, which therefore divides them into equal parts. For this reason, the days and the nights are always equal at the equator.

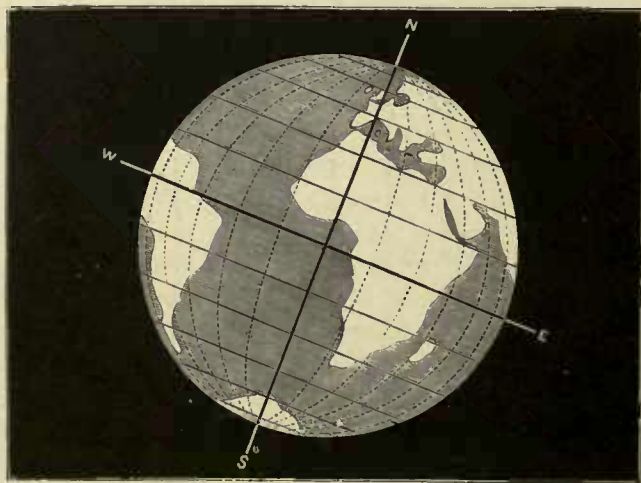
61. At the poles, the equinoctial is no longer inter-



sected by the horizon, but coincides with it, and therefore the diurnal circles are parallel to the horizon. For this reason we give (Fig. 16), not an eastern or western hemisphere for the pole, but a diagram of the whole heavens above the horizon at the north pole. All the circles north of the equinoctial lie above the ho-

rizo at the north pole. Therefore, when the sun is north of that circle, he is always visible at the north pole; that is, from March to September. He appears to wind around the sky in circles nearly parallel to the horizon, never getting more than $23\frac{1}{2}^\circ$ above the horizon, and then winding back. When the sun is south of the equi-

FIG. 17.



noctial, he is invisible at the north pole, since the circles on which he moves are all below the horizon.

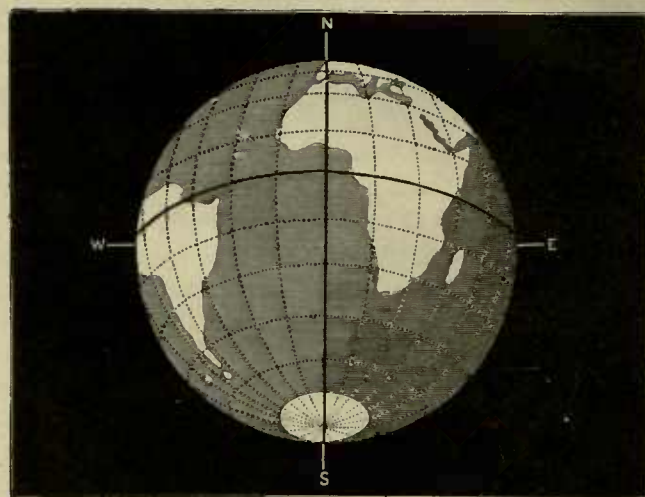
At the south pole the conditions are similar, but the times are reversed.

62. It is of interest to know how the earth would look if we could stand off from it at different seasons, and see the part illuminated. It is evident the half next the sun would be enlightened.

Fig. 17 shows the illuminated half of the earth at the time of the equinoxes. The sun is then vertical at the equator, and the line between light and darkness runs through the poles.

Fig. 18 represents the illuminated half of the earth at the time of the winter solstice. The sun is vertical at

FIG. 18.



the Tropic of Capricorn, south of the equator. The south pole is enlightened, and the north pole is in darkness.

Fig. 19 exhibits the illumination of the earth at the time of the summer solstice. The sun is vertical at the

FIG. 19.



Tropic of Cancer. The north pole is illuminated, and the south pole is in darkness.

The terrestrial circles called the Tropics of Cancer and Capricorn, and the Arctic and Antarctic Circles, all indicate the sun's movements. The Tropic of Cancer is the extreme northern parallel on which the sun shines vertically; the Tropic of Capricorn the extreme southern parallel. The Arctic and Antarctic Circles mark the boundary of sunlight when the sun is vertical over the Tropics.

63. The Annual Change of Temperature.—In order to understand thoroughly some of the effects of the sun's motions, the sun should be observed at noon on June 22d, and also on December 22d. This statement must be accompanied by a warning against looking at the sun with unprotected eyes. It is in the highest degree dangerous. For the present purpose, observation can be very conveniently made through a thin umbrella.

The object of the observation is to note the sun's variation in altitude above the south point of the horizon, and its distance from the zenith.

In order that the description of the sun's motions may excite real and definite ideas, the student should go out of doors while studying this part of the book, and look at the heavens as now to be directed. Let him first look at the zenith. In the United States the sun's position on June 22d is a little south of the zenith. As the student looks at this point, he takes note that a line drawn from it to himself would be, not quite vertical, but a little oblique. Let him next look at a point about 30° from the south point of the horizon; that is, about one third the distance from the horizon to the zenith. In a large part of the United States the sun, on December 22d, is at least 60° from the zenith. As he looks at this point, let him note that a line drawn from it to himself is much more oblique than a line drawn from the sun's position of June 22d.

64. Let us now consider some other facts. The sun's annual journey from north to south coincides with a change of temperature, called the "change of the seasons." There is always, from January to July, a general increase of heat; from July to January, a general decrease. It is true that summers differ in regard to heat, while some winters are colder than others. If, also, we select periods of two or three weeks, it is not true that the day nearest to January will always be coldest, the day nearest to July always warmest. These variations lead us to think that the sun's motions are not the *only* cause affecting the seasons. But since summers are always warmer than winters, we are led to think that the sun's north and south journey is the cause of an *annual* variation of temperature.

65. We gain some further knowledge of the sun's effect on the temperature by traveling north or south.

As we journey northward, the severity of winter increases, and the heat of summer decreases. As we travel southward, the contrary effect is perceived, until we reach the equator. After crossing that circle, the effects of moving north and south, as seen north of the equator, are reversed.

Now, it is evident that, as we travel farther north, the sun would seem to move farther south, and thus the obliquity of the sun's rays would increase. Travelers report to us that this is the case; and thus again a decrease in heat coincides with increasing obliquity of the sun's rays. As we go toward the equator, the obliquity decreases, in conjunction with the experience of warmer weather. After we cross the equator, and travel toward the south pole, the climate becomes colder and the sun's rays more oblique.

66. We have, besides this, a daily experience of increased heat coinciding with a diminishing obliquity of the sun's rays. In the early hours of the morning the sun's rays are very oblique, and the heat regularly increases as the sun becomes more nearly vertical. All these facts make it impossible to doubt that the varying obliquity of the sun's rays, caused by his north and south motion, is the direct means by which the annual change of temperature is effected.

67. If the varying obliquity of heat-rays changes the degree of warmth which we feel, it ought to be true of rays from other sources of heat than the sun. If the student will wet two pocket-handkerchiefs of equal thickness, and hang them up before an open fire in positions equally favorable for receiving warmth, except that one is hung parallel to the fire, the other in an oblique or slanting position, he will find that the one hung parallel will dry first.

68. It may seem an objection to this reasoning that the coldest weather comes about a month after the winter solstice at December 22d, and the warmest about a month later than the summer solstice at June 22d; and also that the warmest period of the day is a good deal later than twelve o'clock. But this is only in unison with the fact that on a cold day, when one is perfectly warm and comfortable, and goes out into the cold, he does not at once reach his coldest feeling. Also, when we take a hot walk in summer, we do not at once cool off on getting into the house. The explanation of these things is, we both lose and gain heat gradually. They do not affect the proof that the varying obliquity of the sun's rays, caused by his movement north or south, is the cause of the annual change of temperature which we call "the Seasons."

69. Other causes modify the variation of temperature caused by the sun's obliquity. Thus the climate of a

place is affected by altitude above the level of the sea, distance from the sea, and the character of the prevailing winds. In going north or south, we may find some of these causes more effectual in some places than the sun's increasing or decreasing obliquity.

70. The heat of summer is evidently much affected also by the length of days, causing heat to accumulate, since we gain and lose it gradually. As we travel north, the days and nights grow more unequal. For this reason it is often found that Quebec or Montreal will report, on one or two days in July, the mercury at a higher degree in the thermometer than Charleston or Savannah. But the average heat of summer is much greater at Charleston and Savannah, and the season is longer.

71. The student remembers that the apparent diameter of the sun is greater in our winter than in our summer, indicating that the sun is in perigee, or nearest to the earth, in winter, and in apogee in summer. Our experience shows that our distance from the sun does not vary enough to counteract the effect of variation in the obliquity of the sun's rays. But in the southern hemisphere the earth is in perihelion in summer, in aphelion in winter. If, now, the variation in our distance from the sun affects the earth at all, it might be expected to make the extremes of temperature in both winter and summer a little greater in the southern than in the northern hemisphere. This is certainly true of any two stations, one in the northern, the other in the southern half of the earth, if they have situations similar as to altitude, prevailing winds, and distance from the sea. But the northern hemisphere contains a much greater proportion of land to water than the southern. Thus, the effect of the sun's varying distance on the hemispheres as wholes is modified by causes belonging to physical geography rather than astronomy.

72. **Inequality in the Sun's Motion.**—The earth does not move in her orbit through equal distances in equal times, and, of course, the sun moves with unequal speed in the ecliptic. This is learned in the following way: When the sun is due west at sunset, he is crossing the equinoctial. Now, astronomers, by watching the sun exactly at the time he crosses the meridian at midday, and then taking his angular distance from the south point of the horizon, can tell with minute accuracy when he crosses the equinoctial, since they know exactly how far it is from the south point of the horizon. They find the sun on the equinoctial twice a year, in March and September. As the points where the equinoctial intersects the ecliptic are 180° apart on each circle, it is evident that, in the intervals between the sun's two passages across the equinoctial, he has traveled through equal spaces. But the student may count the days from March

20th to September 21st,* and then again from September 21st to March 20th, and he will find the first interval a few days the longer. From March to September, the sun travels north of the equinoctial, therefore he takes a longer time to pass over the 180° lying north than the 180° south of it. The times being unequal, and the distances equal, the rate of motion varies.

73. By looking in the almanac, the student will find the words " \odot in perigee," " \odot in apogee," in December and July. These words indicate the times of the earth's smallest and greatest distances from the sun. The time when the earth moves fastest thus coincides with her greatest approach to the sun. Astronomers attribute the earth's varying speed to a variation in the attraction of the sun produced by his varying distance from her.

74. **Slow Changes of Motion.**—The earth's motions undergo some changes so slow that the observations of many generations of astronomers are needed to detect and know them accurately. Two will be mentioned here.

75. The earth is in perihelion, or at the point of her orbit nearest the sun, very nearly at the time of the winter solstice.† But the times of perihelion and aphelion come a few minutes earlier every year. In the course of several thousand years, the earth's perihelion will have revolved round the year until it comes at the time of the autumnal equinox, and the sun's distance will be the same in the winters and summers of both hemispheres. After a still longer period the time of perihelion will come in the summer of the northern hemisphere. Any difference of climates in the two hemispheres which is caused by the variation in the earth's distance from the sun will then be reversed (see 71). Finally, the perihelion-point will revolve back to its present position, and the present climates will be restored. If a line be drawn between the points of perihelion and aphelion, the effect of this change is to make it revolve. The change is called a revolution of the line of apsides.

76. **Precession of the Equinoxes.**—Astronomers, watching the sun's motions with a patience, carefulness, and persistence of which students can form little idea, discovered that the sun does not cross the equinoctial at the same points of the ecliptic, but a little farther west every year, and, of course, a very little sooner. The difference is only $50''$, but in about twenty-five thousand years it will make the equinoctial points revolve round the ecliptic. They also found that certain stars

* Owing to our way of measuring time, we can not get the difference in time quite correctly in this way. Still, the difference is on the right side, and the student will realize better what he is studying if he actually counts the days.

† The student must find in the almanac the words " \odot in perigee," " \odot in apogee."

round the north pole seemed to be moving in circles of increasing size, and certain others in circles of decreasing size. Since the size of the circles depends on the distances from the poles, this indicates some change in the points of the heavens between which the earth's axis extends. Since the pole is 90° from every point of the equinoctial, it is evident a change in the position of that circle must change the places of the poles, or centers of apparent motion in the heavens.

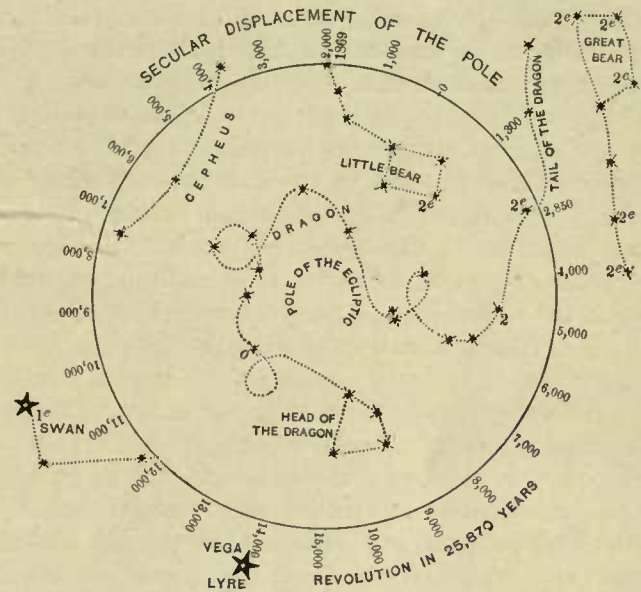
77. While the equinoctial points move west round the ecliptic, the pole of the heavens describes a circle with a radius of $23\frac{1}{2}^\circ$ around the pole of the ecliptic. The student may easily understand how this is by a little study of one of the small globes now very generally used, and having a circle, called the ecliptic, marked on it. By holding the globe so that the ecliptic circle is perfectly horizontal, the pole of the ecliptic is at the top, and it may be marked with a little wax, so that it can be identified. Then the axis is made perpendicular, and it will be seen that the pole of the ecliptic revolves around the north pole of the globe when the globe is revolved. Let us suppose now that the ecliptic moved round on the sphere, not with it. It is clear that it would have precisely the positions in space which it had when it revolved with the sphere, and, of course, its pole, which is 90° from the ecliptic itself, would have precisely the positions it did when ecliptic and sphere revolved together—that is, the positions *in space*. And it is clear that as the ecliptic would slide round the sphere, the points where it intersects the equinoctial moving round the equinoctial, so the pole would slide round the north pole, making a circle on the sphere.

Now, in explaining this, we have made the ecliptic move on the equinoctial. This was done only because the globe revolves round the poles of the equator, and could not be made to revolve round the poles of the ecliptic. But in the heavens, the student must remember it is the poles of the ecliptic which are at rest, and the poles of the equinoctial, in this very slow change of which we speak, revolve round the poles of the ecliptic on the celestial sphere. Since the north pole of the ecliptic is distant $23\frac{1}{2}^\circ$ from the north pole of the equinoctial, it is clear that the circle described by the pole of the latter would have a radius of $23\frac{1}{2}^\circ$.

78. From these facts it is clear that the centers of motion on the celestial sphere, or the poles of the heavens, are all the time changing place, but so slowly that the north pole will not complete a revolution in less than twenty-five thousand years. The map appended (Fig. 20) shows the position of the circle in which the pole is moving. The cipher shows the place of the pole at the beginning of the Christian era. The figures to the right show the position of the pole in years B. C. Those to the left show the position in years A. D. It can be seen that Polaris will be at the center of motion in the year A. D. 2000. In 2850 B. C., a star in Draco was the pole-star. This is supposed to be about the time when the

Great Pyramid was built. The star Vega in Lyra, of the first magnitude, must at one time have been very near

FIG. 20.



the pole. Since the radius of this circle is $23\frac{1}{2}^\circ$, it is clear that the present pole-star will one day be 47° from the pole.

79. When the ecliptic was first laid off in degrees, the circle was divided also into twelve parts called signs, and containing 30° each. The signs were named for the constellations they were then in, viz., Aries, Taurus, Gemini, Cancer, Leo, Virgo, Libra, Scorpio, Sagittarius, Capricornus, Aquarius, and Pisces. Since then, by the precession of the equinoxes, the signs have moved out of the constellations from which they took their names, but they have not changed names. Thus, the intersection of the two great circles is called the "first point of Aries," though it is in the constellation Pisces. The same names are used for both signs and constellations; and when we hear them, it is necessary to be careful in understanding which is meant, since they no longer coincide. When the terms are used in almanacs in regard to the sun's motions, the signs, not the constellations, are meant.

80. When the Tropics of Cancer and Capricorn were named, the winter solstice, at which time the sun is vertical at the Tropic of Capricorn, took place when the sun was in Capricornus. Also, the sun was then in Cancer when he was vertical at the Tropic of Cancer; that is, at the summer solstice. But the precession of the equinoxes has changed that. On the 22d of June the sun is now in Gemini, not Cancer; and on December 22d he is now in Sagittarius, not Capricornus. But the names are retained for the two circles.

Since Celestial Longitude and Right Ascension are reckoned from a movable point, the Celestial Longitude and Right Ascension of all stars are slowly changing. Since the pole changes, Declination also changes.

81. Time.—Even savages need to measure time in some rough way, and as the concerns of civilized life become complicated, men want measures of time which shall be conspicuous in their application, and also accurately adapted to men in all places and all centuries. The conspicuous measures of time, corresponding also to the practical affairs of life, are a revolution of the seasons, and an apparent diurnal revolution of the sun round the earth. Civilized nations early began to use these, and a desire to know them and to make our divisions of time accurate, encouraged the study of astronomy.

A revolution of the seasons is not exactly equal to a revolution of the earth in her orbit round the sun. If the earth were between the sun and that point of the ecliptic which is now crossed by the equinoctial, she would have made a revolution round the sun when she again came between the sun and that point of the ecliptic. But since the equinoctial does not continue to cross the ecliptic at the same point, but crosses earlier, it is plain that the earth will get back to the new crossing before she comes in line with the stars, and the point where she formerly crossed. This results from what is called the precession of the equinoxes. The interval between the two times when the earth passes between the sun and any point of the starry heavens is called a Sidereal Year. The interval between two passages over the same equinox is called a Tropical Year, and it contains exactly one revolution of the seasons. A sidereal year contains 365 days, 6 hours, 9 minutes, 9 seconds. A tropical year contains 365 days, 5 hours, 48 minutes, 46 seconds. The difference is very small, and would for a long time occasion no inconvenience if the year of our calendar corresponded with the sidereal year, but in time it would make the seasons begin on very different days and hours from those which now mark their beginning. Thus it is necessary to take the tropical year for the basis of our calendar.

82. The student recalls the fact that a solar day is longer than a sidereal day. We have, in this chapter, discussed the inequality of days to nights, using the word day to refer to the period of light in distinction from the period of darkness. We shall now use it to refer to the apparent diurnal revolution of the sun round the earth. It is the interval between two passages by the sun over the meridian below the horizon.

83. The meridian of any place is a circle belonging to the horizon system of circles. Since it always passes

through our zenith and nadir, it revolves with the earth on her axis, passing through every point of the ecliptic. Let us suppose the sun to be on the half of the meridian which is below the horizon. The meridian, of course, passes through a certain point of the ecliptic, since the sun is always on the ecliptic. The meridian makes a revolution along with the earth, and reaches the point of the ecliptic where it left the sun. The sun, which all the time moves east on the ecliptic, is no longer at that point, but is further ahead. Now, we must remember that the earth in her orbit does not move through equal spaces in equal times. Of course, the sun's motion in the ecliptic, which is due to the earth's motion in her orbit, is of unequal speed. Sometimes he will be farther ahead than at other times, and as the meridian, moving by the earth's diurnal motion (which does carry her through equal spaces in equal times), sometimes meets the sun sooner, sometimes later, the solar days vary in length. But they vary from another cause. The meridian moves due east, but the sun in the ecliptic does not move due east. His motion is compounded, the student remembers, of motions east and north or south, and sometimes he moves more directly east, sometimes his motion has more of a northern and southern direction, even though he moves through the same distance in both cases. When his motion is nearly east, as at the solstices, it takes the meridian longer to catch up than when his motion is northeast or southeast, as at the equinoxes. For this reason the solar day (which is a period of both light and darkness) varies in length, being longest at the solstices, when it takes longest to catch up with the sun.*

84. On account of this variation in the length of the solar days, the *day adopted for our calendar is the mean, or average, of all the solar days in a year.* An hour is the twenty-fourth part of a day.

85. For this reason clock-time and sun-time do not always agree—or, in other words, mean solar time and apparent solar time do not always agree. But the almanac always tells us how they differ. (It is impossible to study this book well without actually using an almanac.) If we turn to February 10th, we find from the almanac the times of sunrise and sunset given according to our clock-time. But if we subtract from twelve, the hours and minutes given for sunrise, in order to find out how long it is before twelve o'clock, we should expect, if our

* There are two things the student must not get confused. Days (periods of light) are longest and shortest at the solstices, because their length depends on the sun's north and south position. Days (periods of time between the sun's passage of the meridian below the horizon) are longest at the solstices, because their length depends on the sun's eastern motion, which is greatest at the solstices.

twelve o'clock corresponded with the sun's passage over the meridian above us, to find it equal to the hours and minutes given for sunset. The sun must reach the meridian half-way between sunrise and sunset. Thus we should find that, on February 10th, a good watch, set by the sun at sunrise, would reach twelve before the time the sun crossed the meridian. On February 10th the student will find that the interval between sunrise and the noon of the clock, is full thirty minutes shorter than the interval between the same noon and sunset. In a column at the side of the record of sunrise and sunset, and under the heading "Sun Slow," will be found the figure 15. If this be subtracted from the longer period and added to the smaller, either will then give the true time of the sun's passage across the meridian, which is found to be fifteen minutes later than twelve o'clock. Because the sun comes to the meridian later than the twelve of clock-time, he is said to be "slow." The column of figures is called the "equation of time," because their addition and subtraction make the morning and afternoon periods, as reported by the almanac, equal.

By studying the sunrise and sunset figures of November 2d, we perceive another discrepancy. Here the almanac tells us the sun is "fast"; that is, he crosses the meridian before the twelve of our clocks and watches set by the almanac figures for sunrise. The figures under the sun column "fast" must be *added* to the afternoon figures and *subtracted* from the morning figures. The difference between sun and clock times is greatest February 10th, November 2d, May 14th, and July 25th. Four times in the year the almanac reports no difference between the sun's actual passage across the meridian and the twelve of the clocks. These days are April 15th, June 14th, August 31st, and December 24th. The solar and the calendar day are then equal.

86. After we accept the mean solar day and the tropical year for the basis of our calendar, another difficulty arises. For practical purposes it is necessary to have our year exactly divisible by our day. Now, in the tropical year, there are 365 solar days, 5 hours, 48 minutes, 46 seconds. The Romans at first made 365 days a year, but the repeated neglect of hours, minutes, and seconds every year, made an increasing error, so that in the time of Julius Cæsar the interval of a year no longer corresponded with a revolution of the seasons. Cæsar added a day to every fourth year (or six hours for each year). This year of 366 days, called by us "leap-year," is also called a "Julian year." The calendar, thus reformed, was used by Christian nations for about sixteen hundred years. This calendar is called "Old Style," or simply "O. S."

87. But since the tropical year is shorter than 365

days, 6 hours, this plan added too much, and after a while, March 21st got ten days ahead of the sun's passage of the equinoctial. Then Pope Gregory introduced, A. D. 1582, what is called from him the "Gregorian Calendar." This provides that "*every year divisible by 4 shall contain 366 days, except the centuries, which shall not be leap years unless they are divisible by 4 after striking off the two right-hand figures.*" Thus, 2000, 2400, 2800, are leap-years, but 1900, 2100, 2200, 2300, 2500, and 2700, are not leap-years, though divisible by four. Even by this rule, the years are not exactly divisible by days, but the error will not amount to a day in about three thousand years.

88. But it was necessary, in 1582, to get rid of the result of past errors, as well as to provide against future errors. The ten days which the 21st of March had got ahead of the sun's passage of the equinoctial were got rid of by calling the 5th of October the 15th.

89. The new mode of reckoning time is called "New Style," or "N. S." It was adopted at once by nearly all European nations. But the English people did not adopt New Style until 1752, when the error amounted to eleven days, which were left out of the year by calling the 3d of September the 14th. New Style has not yet been adopted in Russia.

90. Thus the year and day of our calendar can not in strictness be said to coincide with the tropical year and solar day. The interval between the sun's two successive passages over the same equinox, and the interval between the sun's two successive passages over the meridian below the horizon, are simply the *basis* of our year and day. Our years and days differ from the solar year and day, but some days and years are longer, some shorter. In the case of the days, the differences counterbalance one another exactly; in the case of the years very nearly. The coincidence is near enough for practical purposes.

NOTE.—In the almanac the signs of the zodiac have the following symbols :

♈ Aries	♋ Cancer	♎ Libra	♏ Capricornus
♉ Taurus	♌ Leo	♍ Scorpio	♐ Aquarius
♊ Gemini	♍ Virgo	♐ Sagittarius	♑ Pisces

CHAPTER V.

THE MOON AND HER MOTIONS, AND HOW TO OBSERVE THEM.

91. No other heavenly body offers so convenient an opportunity for full observation as the moon. She comes often, and goes through the round of her motions in a reasonable time. It is not only exceedingly interesting

work to watch her through a full revolution, it is excellent preparatory training for the observation study of the planets. The positions of the moon in relation to the sun and earth are similar to certain important positions of the planets in regard to sun and earth.

In order to observe the moon well, it is necessary to know at least those constellations of the zodiac which are in the evening sky. They can be learned in a few evenings by drawing them a good deal. (See Introduction.)

It is best to begin observation as soon after the date given in the almanac for new moon as the observer can get a sight of her. It is very difficult to see the new moon before she is two days old.

There are three lines of observation which must here be treated separately, in order to avoid the confusion which results from describing several things at once. But the student must carry out all three together when he can study nature for himself. If he has time to study the moon through two revolutions, the observation-study of II, p. 33, may be postponed until the last.

I. The Moon's Motions.

92. The Diurnal Revolution.—At two or three days from the time of new moon, the moon will appear as a slender crescent, seen soon after sunset above the western horizon, and not far from the sunset-point. If, after finding her, the student will return in ten minutes to look again, he will see that she is moving toward the western horizon, and will disappear behind it soon after sunset. As all the heavenly bodies which the student has observed exhibit similar motions, he will recognize hers as apparent, and due to the earth's rotation on her axis. If so, the moon must cross the sky below the horizon during the twelve hours after her disappearance, pass above the eastern horizon a little after sunrise (invisible because of the sun's blinding light), and, crossing the heavens above the horizon during the day, reappear in the west when the sun's light is withdrawn. This is the moon's apparent diurnal revolution, and it is the cause of her rising in the east and setting in the west. As it is desirable to avoid any confusion of this motion with others, it will be best to make observations at the same hour every evening.

93. The Moon's Real Motion.—On the second night of observation, the student would find the moon again in the west, but she would be a little higher above the horizon, that is, a little farther east, than before. It is clear that the moon, or the horizon and earth, must have moved. If this motion is apparent, it must be caused by the motion of the observer and earth; and the earth must move west to cause it. But we know that the earth moves east. For this reason we conclude that this

is a real, or, as astronomers call it, a "proper" motion of the moon. It causes the moon to change place among the stars every evening, while the diurnal revolution makes the moon move with the stars. It should be part of the student's observation-work to note the moon's place among the stars every evening, and thus detect her real motion.

94. The Moon's Real Revolution. Opposition and Conjunction.—Since the moon was found moving east, the student will, upon reflection, conclude that she must have come into the evening sky from below the western horizon, and, in doing so, must have passed the sun. She must have crossed a meridian circle running north and south through the sun's position. When she does this, she is said to be in conjunction with the sun.* She does not always cross this line exactly at sunset, but she moves too slowly to get very far east from the sun at the very next sunset after it. So, after conjunction, we always see her near the western horizon at sunset. The moon becomes new after conjunction.

If the student continues to watch the moon's real motion at dark, he will find her every evening farther east among the stars; and in fifteen days she will have crossed the evening sky, and will be found at sunset on or near the eastern horizon. She will have made a half-revolution round the earth. After this she will continue to move east, and, of course, she will at dark be on the heavens below the eastern horizon.

95. It will be evident that she must have passed the point of the ecliptic 180° from the sun, since that point is always on the eastern horizon at sunset. When she crosses a celestial meridian running nearly north and south through this point, she is said to be in opposition with the sun. She may cross this line at any time of the day or night, but she does not move fast enough to get very far from it by the next sunset; and so, when she is at opposition, she will appear to rise in the east about the time the sun sets.

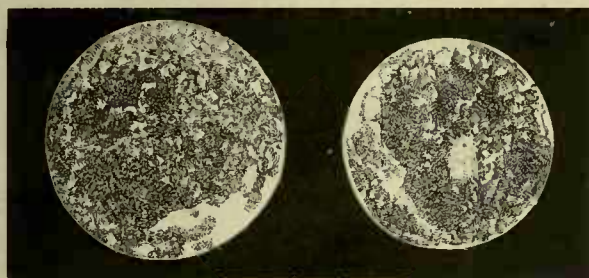
After opposition the moon can be seen only by sitting up until she rises, but her rising will come later and later, and finally it will be necessary to get out of bed before light in the morning in order to see her. After her opposition, she approaches the sun on his western side, and she can finally be found in the morning near him. Twenty-nine and a half days after conjunction she would pass the sun, and after that she would again be seen in the west as new moon. Thus, continued ob-

* The student can readily understand the position of these bodies in nature, and therefore a diagram is quite unnecessary. It is usually positively pernicious, since students think of the diagram rather than the positions in nature. They may have their heads filled with diagrams corresponding to nothing whatever in nature that they know.

servation shows us plainly that the moon's proper motion is a revolution round the earth as a center.

96. The Moon's Orbit.—During this revolution the moon would not have changed apparent size, so far as the observer could tell without measurement. Therefore it would be evident that the figure of her motion is nearly a circle with the earth as a center.* Measurement, however, shows a change; and for this and other reasons it is believed that the figure of her orbit is an ellipse. The drawings (Fig. 21) show the variation in the moon's apparent size.

FIG. 21.



When the moon is near the horizon, she looks larger than when she is seen overhead; but this is an illusion, as is shown by measurement. We estimate her distance from us by so many intervening objects, that she seems to us farther off, and therefore larger.

97. Sidereal and Synodical Revolutions.—At conjunction, or new moon; at the beginning of these observations, the moon would be very near the sun; and, as the student knows, a constellation of the zodiac would be behind, or west of both. Thus the earth, moon, sun, and a star-group would be nearly in line. After the moon had completed its revolution of twenty-nine and a half days, and was again in conjunction with the sun, and on the western horizon at sunset, the same star-group would not be there, but another, since the stars would have been moving west all the time. The star-group which was on the horizon at the first conjunction would have gone below the horizon, and the earth and the moon would have been in line with the first star-group before the moon came in line with the earth and sun. (See Note on Art. 97, p. 89.)

The interval of time after which the moon comes back to the line between the earth and the first star-group is called a Sidereal Revolution of the moon. The interval after which the moon comes back to the same position with regard to the earth and sun is called a Synodical Revolution of the moon. Thus the period between two successive conjunctions or two successive

oppositions is a synodical revolution. A sidereal revolution is completed in twenty-seven and one-third days, and a synodical revolution in twenty-nine and a half days.

98. If the student were asked why the sidereal revolution is shorter than the synodical revolution, he would perhaps say, "Because the stars move west." But the motion of the stars is apparent, and due to the earth's annual eastern motion round the sun. Therefore astronomers say that, when the moon has come round to the stars from which she started, she has to go a little farther to catch up with the earth and revolve round the sun.

II. The Moon's Path and the Ecliptic.

99. The second line of observation is to watch the moon's path among the stars, and learn how it is situated in regard to the ecliptic. The moon is nearer to us than any heavenly body, while the fixed stars are at an immeasurable distance, but she seems to move among them, because they are on the background of the sphere against which we see her.

Sometimes the moon's light obscures the stars near her, so that it is somewhat difficult to trace her path with any certainty. But even in this case the student must learn all he can from observation, and must not stop because he can not see everything.

100. The points to be noted in watching the moon and the ecliptic are as follows: The student must note that the moon is always in a zodiacal constellation, and always very near the ecliptic. She sometimes seems to move toward it, sometimes from it. She crosses it. It is somewhat difficult to ascertain the exact point of crossing, but the almanac gives help. The symbols "☾ in ♈" signify "The moon to day crosses the ecliptic going north." The symbols "☾ in ♏" signify "The moon to day crosses the ecliptic going south."

101. The paths of the sun and moon intersect at an angle of 5° . Therefore she is always very near the circle of the ecliptic, and when at conjunction she passes the sun, she can never be far north or south of the line passing through sun and earth; and, if she is crossing the ecliptic at the time, she will be on it. Also, at opposition, she can not be very far north or south of the line joining earth and sun, since that line passes through the point of the ecliptic 180° from the sun. She will be on it if she is on the ecliptic.

102. The points where the path of the moon crosses the plane of the ecliptic are called Nodes.

III. The Moon's Phases.

103. This is the third subject to be studied by the observation of nature, beginning at new moon. Fig.

* That the moon's orbit is nearly a circle, follows from this, and the fact that her path on the heavens is a circle. (See Art. 43.)

FIG. 22.



22 represents the phases of the moon from new to full; and, reversing the order, from full to new again.

First Quarter.—If we begin to observe the new moon as soon as she is seen in the west, she will have the appearance of 1 in Fig. 22, viz., a full circle covered with a faint illumination, but having around the margin, turned toward the sun below the horizon, a slender bright crescent. If we suppose that the moon shines by the light of the sun which she reflects to us, and that the sun is a great deal farther from us than the moon, it will account for the appearances. The sun must enlighten half the moon, and half the moon must be turned to us; but these must be nearly opposite halves, since the moon is nearly between the sun and earth. But since the moon is not on a straight line between the earth and sun, but a little above the line, it is clear the halves turned to us and to the sun can not be exactly opposite halves, but must coincide a little. We see the bright crescent because we see a small part of the half that is enlightened by the sun.

But the hemisphere of the moon turned toward the earth just at dark is turned toward the portion of the earth just below the western horizon, which is bathed in sunshine. As moonlight causes a faint illumination on the earth, it is clear that sunlight reflected from the earth to the moon could cause the faint light seen over the moon's whole surface.

Second Quarter.—If we continue to observe the moon, we shall see that, as she moves east, she rises higher, and the crescent increases; and at seven days after new moon she is overhead at sunset and is a half moon. She has then passed her first quarter, as it is called, and begins the second. In this case, her western side is still turned toward the sun; but, since she is above our heads at sunset, only half the western hemisphere coincides with the hemisphere which we see above us. For this reason we find only a half-hemisphere enlightened or visible, and the convex side of that is turned toward the west.

Third Quarter.—After this, as the moon continues to move east, she increases in size, and about fifteen days

after new moon she begins her third quarter. She is then full, or shows a full enlightened circle; and she is rising in the east while the sun is setting in the west. The same side is now turned toward us and toward the sun, for she is now nearly in line with sun and earth, the earth being in the middle. If she were quite in line, it is evident that the earth would cut off the sun's light from her, and we should have an eclipse of the moon. If at full moon she is in that part of her path on the heavens which crosses the ecliptic, she is in a direct line with earth and sun.

At full moon she is 180° from the sun on the celestial sphere; and, as she still moves east, she must approach the sun on the other side, and so she begins to decrease on her western side. After the beginning of her third quarter, she can generally be seen in the daytime, because she is so far from the sun on the sphere that he does not entirely obscure her light. When, from approaching the sun, she becomes invisible in the daytime, she can best be observed by rising just before light in the morning. We know that, at that hour, the sun is just below the eastern horizon.

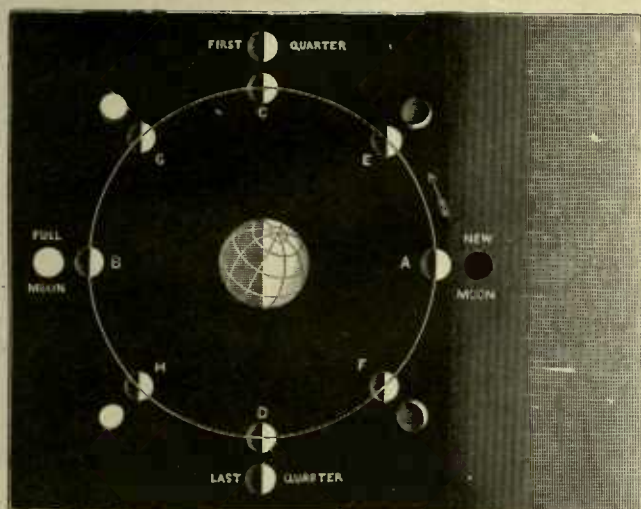
Fourth Quarter.—About twenty-one days after new moon, she begins her fourth quarter. She is then a half-moon again, and when seen while it is still dark in the morning, she is nearly overhead, with her convex side turned toward the sun. It is evident that he illuminates her eastern hemisphere, and that we see only half of it. The half-hemisphere which we do see has its convex side turned east.

After this, we should find the moon drawing nearer the sun at sunrise, and about the twenty-seventh day after new moon we should again see the faintly illumined full circle with the bright, slender crescent on the side next the sun. Sun and earth would again face opposite sides of the moon, nearly, but not exactly. The moon being a little above the line between earth and sun, the hemispheres opposite each would to a very small extent coincide; and this is the reason why we should see the crescent. The faint illumination would be turned toward the sunny side of the earth below the eastern hori-

zon. Finally, the moon would pass nearly between earth and sun, and then we should have new moon again. If the moon passed directly between earth and sun, it is clear she would intercept the sun's light from us, and we should have an eclipse of the sun. There is no eclipse unless moon and sun are together at the points where the moon's path on the heavens crosses the ecliptic.

The moon's phases are sometimes illustrated by a diagram which is given below (Fig. 23), mainly because some teachers will like to have it. The knowledge which

FIG. 23.

*The Phases of the Moon.*

such a diagram seems to give is very delusive. The student will be very unwise not to watch the moon herself.

From observing the moon it is very clear that she shines by light reflected from the sun, for we do not see any illumination except on the parts which are turned toward the sun.

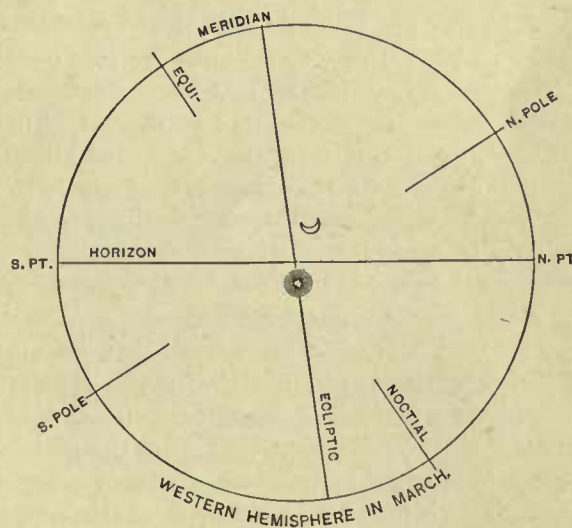
104. Nothing can give a student of astronomy a complete idea of the causes and conditions of eclipses but observation of the relative positions of sun, moon, and earth through a full synodical revolution. He will see that sun, moon, and earth never are nearly in line except at new and full moons; that at new moon only, they are nearly in line with the moon in the middle; and therefore an eclipse of the sun can take place at new moon alone. Also, at full moon only, they are nearly in line with the earth in the middle, and therefore an eclipse of the moon can take place at full moon alone. He will see that they never can be in line unless the moon at full or new is on the ecliptic; that is, unless the earth and moon are on the line in which the planes of their orbits intersect.

The subject of eclipses will be more fully treated further on.

105. **Positions of the Moon's Crescent.**—From new to full, the moon increases gradually from a crescent to a full circle, and back again from full to new; but, owing to the fact that the moon is sometimes north of the ecliptic, sometimes south of it—that is, sometimes north of the sun's path, and sometimes south of it—the positions of the crescent vary. The variation is most noticed at new moon, when the sun is known to be just below the horizon. Sometimes a line joining the horns is nearly vertical, as ☾; sometimes it is nearly horizontal, as ☾. Superstitious people call the first "wet moon," and the last "dry moon," and suppose they foretell the weather. The variation really depends on the positions of the moon and sun in regard to the horizon.

The moon's crescent may have any position intermediate between these. It is most nearly horizontal at the new moon near March 20th, and most nearly perpendicular at the new moon near September 21st. At sunset on March 20th the ecliptic has nearly the aspect of Map I. Fig. 24 shows the western hemisphere of the heavens at this time, and it shows that the ecliptic is

FIG. 24.

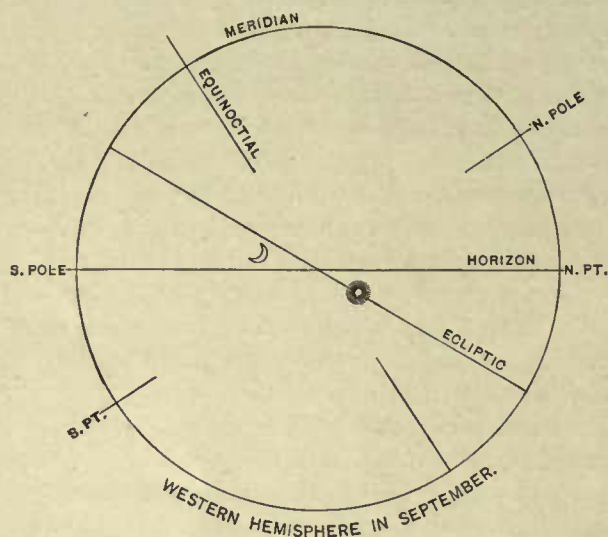


nearly perpendicular to the horizon. In this case, the sun, which is always on the ecliptic, is nearly below the intersection of ecliptic and horizon. If the moon is at the same time north of the ecliptic, she is directly over the sun, and as the convex side of the crescent is always turned toward the sun, it is nearly horizontal.

On September 21st, at sunset, the ecliptic has the aspect of that circle on Map II. Fig. 25 shows the western hemisphere of the heavens at sunset on September 21st, and it is seen that the ecliptic is much inclined to

the horizon. The sun, after setting, is far north of the intersection of ecliptic and horizon. If the moon at this

FIG. 25.



time is south of the ecliptic, she is nearly south of the sun, and therefore the line joining the horns of the crescent is nearly vertical.

The facts which explain these positions of the crescent are: 1. The position of the moon in relation to the ecliptic. 2. The two positions of the ecliptic in relation to the horizon. These facts will have little reality to the student unless he sees them in nature. But in order to give them reality, it is not necessary for him to wait and see them in March or September.

106. The Moon's Axial Rotation.—The most careless person usually remembers, without special observation, that the moon always presents the same shadings of surface, in which many persons have traced a resemblance to a man's face. Thus it is evident that we must see nearly the same hemisphere of the moon all the time. If the student will walk around a chair with his face turned to it all the time, he will imitate the motion. In doing this he turns his face once to every point of the compass. This is precisely what he does when he stands on one spot and turns round or revolves axially. Therefore the moon's motion is usually described by saying that she revolves once on her axis while performing her revolution in her orbit.

107. The Moon's Librations.—At different times we really see a little more than one half the moon's surface. The motions to which this is due are called the moon's Librations. In consequence of the elliptical form of the moon's orbit, her motion, like that of the earth, is unequal. But her motion on her axis is equal, and therefore her orbital motion sometimes gets ahead of her

axial motion, or falls behind it, and thus we see a little farther around her east or west. This is called her Libration in Longitude.

The moon's axis, like that of the earth, is inclined to the plane of her orbit, and, like the earth's axis, always moves parallel to itself. We know this, because, when we see the moon through a telescope, she shows a change in the part round the poles. This is called the moon's Libration in Latitude.

Owing to the fact that we are about four thousand miles from the center of the earth, which is the center of the moon's motion, we see her from slightly different positions when on our eastern and western horizons; and there is thus a slight variation in the part of the surface seen. This is called her Parallax Libration. Parallax is the displacement of an object caused by the observer's change of position.

We see in all about .58 of the moon's surface.

108. Times of the Moon's Risings.—What we call the moon's rising is due to the earth's rotation on her axis, carrying the horizon east to meet her. But during one rotation of the earth the moon moves 13° east in her orbit, and therefore the horizon must move farther to overtake her. As the earth and horizon revolve through 1° in four minutes, it takes fifty minutes, on an average, for the horizon to catch up with the moon. Therefore she rises about fifty minutes later every day. But the times of the moon's rising vary a good deal.

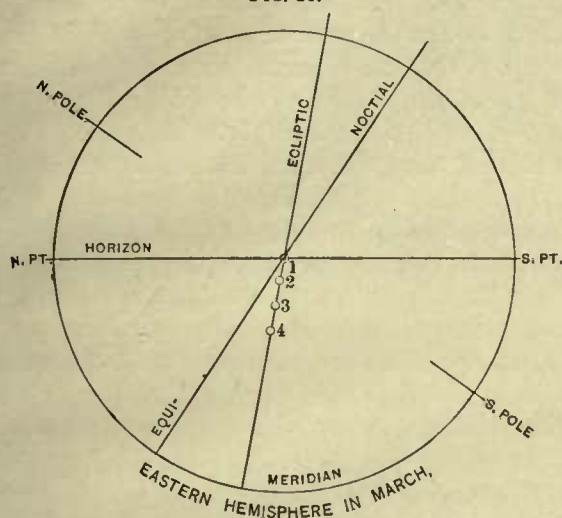
109. Harvest Moon.—When the constellation Pisces is on the eastern horizon at the time the moon rises, the retardation in her rising on successive nights is much lessened. In latitude 40° the delay may be only about twenty-five minutes. The difference is the more noticed when the moon is full, both because she is then more conspicuous, and because she rises at a more convenient hour for observation. The full moon rises in Pisces within a fortnight of the autumnal equinox in September. It is widely noticed by farmers, to whom its early risings are of use in gathering the crops. They call it Harvest Moon.

When Virgo is on the eastern horizon at full moon, which happens within a fortnight of the vernal equinox in March, the delay in her rising is increased. In latitude 40° the variation in her time of rising on successive nights may equal an hour and a quarter.

An explanation (and diagrams) of these phenomena are of little use except to aid the student in observing the facts in nature which cause them. A knowledge of mere diagrams is illusory. In order to have real knowledge, however, it is not necessary to see all the facts together, and therefore not necessary to wait until harvest moon. The facts are as follows: 1. The moon is

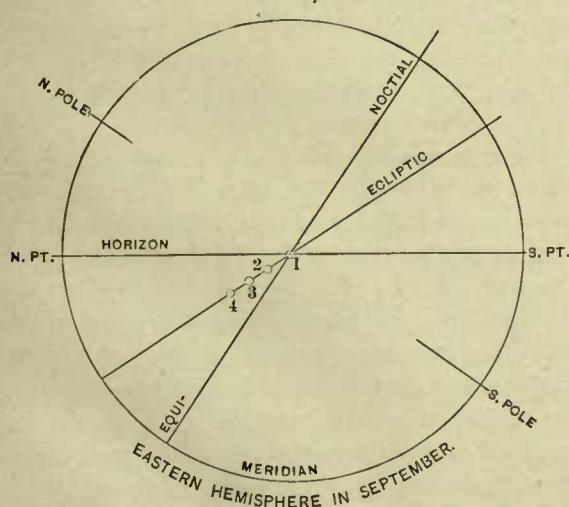
always very near the ecliptic, and we can therefore use the ecliptic to illustrate the angle which her path among the stars makes with the horizon. 2. The moon moves east among the stars; this causes the delay in her ris-

FIG. 26.



ing. 3. In March the ecliptic (and the moon's path) seem to curve very little toward the south, and she therefore moves on a path nearly perpendicular to the horizon. Map I shows this, and so does also Fig. 26, exhibiting the eastern hemisphere of the heavens and the aspect of the ecliptic in March. Also, in September, the ecliptic is much inclined to the horizon. This is shown in Map II and in Fig. 27, exhibiting the eastern hemisphere of the heavens for September, with the aspect of the ecliptic. It is clear that it would take longer to overtake the moon

FIG. 27.



moving away from the horizon on a path like the ecliptic of Fig. 26, than when she moves on a path like the ecliptic

of Fig. 27, even if she moved 13° daily on both. And as her rising is due to the horizon moving down to overtake her, she is less delayed in rising on successive nights in September; and in March the delay is greater. In December and June, the path of the ecliptic is nearly parallel with the equinoctial, and the angle of the equinoctial and the horizon does not vary at all, as can be seen from Figs. 26 and 27.

Since the ecliptic is not a visible line in nature, it can not be traced so definitely as on the diagram; but a careful observer, tracing it by the stars, and noting the direction of the zodiacal constellations, will have no difficulty in seeing the difference in the angle, as exhibited in March and September.

Harvest moon has these peculiarities only in high latitudes, because the great variation in the angles is due to the elevation of the pole above the horizon. The elevation of the pole makes all circles running nearly east and west appear to curve southward at and near the point where they cross the meridian above us. A consideration of Figs. 26 and 27 will show that the difference in the angles with the horizon is due to the elevation of the pole above the horizon.

III. The Moon's Motion North and South.—Since the moon's path on the heavens is so near the ecliptic, she must vary in position north and south. Also, since she goes through 180° in about fifteen days, she must move from north to south much faster than the sun. This can be seen plainly by watching her risings and settings on successive evenings. Since full moons are always 180° from the sun, they are far north in winter, and longer above the horizon than in summer, when they are far south. Thus they illumine the long winter nights when they are most needed.

III. Revolution of the Nodes.—Let us suppose that the student, watching the moon, sees her approaching the ecliptic, and, aided by the entries of the almanac, " \odot in Ω ," and " \odot in ϑ ," identifies with some degree of accuracy a point where she crosses the ecliptic. If, a year or eighteen months afterward, he observes the moon at the same crossing, he will find that she crosses earlier, or farther west. Of course, the intersections, moving on a circle, will finally come round to the point from which they started. Now the moon seems to cross the ecliptic on the heavens, only because she is then crossing the *plane* of the ecliptic. Thus this revolution shows that the moon's nodes revolve on her orbit. It is completed in about nineteen years.

Eclipses.

III. Umbra and Penumbra.—When a luminous body is larger than a point, the shadows made by intercepting

its light consist of two portions. There is a dark central part which receives no direct rays from the luminary. This is called the Umbra. Surrounding the umbra, there is a fringe of less dense shadow, which receives direct rays from some portions of the luminous body, but not from all portions. This is called the Penumbra.

113. Shadows of Earth and Moon.—The shadows formed by intercepting the sun's light consist of an umbra and a penumbra. The umbra belonging to the shadow of the earth or moon is cone-shaped, with the apex of the cone turned away from the sun. The penumbra increases in width with the distance from the sun (see Fig. 28).

114. Eclipses of the Moon.—An eclipse of the moon

takes place whenever the moon passes through the umbra of the earth's shadow. So small an obscuration results from the moon's passage through the penumbra, that it is not called an eclipse. In a total eclipse of the moon her whole sphere is still faintly visible, and is of a coppery hue. This is due to rays of light refracted by the earth's atmosphere, so as to fall on the moon.

115. Eclipses of the Sun.—A total solar eclipse takes place in any part of the earth which is in the umbra of the moon's shadow. The umbra of the moon's shadow is so small that it does not often cause darkness over a part of the earth's surface more than a hundred miles in diameter, but by the moon's rapid movement this shadow

is a very striking event. The stars come out and the animals go to rest. A total eclipse of the sun is an interesting event to astronomers, because it gives them an opportunity of studying the sun's corona, of which an account will be given in the chapter on "The Sun."

A partial solar eclipse exists in those parts of the earth which are in the penumbra of the moon's shadow.

The moon's distance from the earth varies, on account of the elliptical form of her orbit. If an eclipse of the sun occurs when the moon is at her greatest distance from the earth, her apparent diameter is diminished, and she can not entirely hide the sun from us. We have then what is called an Annular Eclipse of the Sun. The moon conceals the central part of the sun's surface, but around her dark body is seen a ring of brilliant light.

A total eclipse of the sun lasts but a few minutes, and often only a few seconds. A partial eclipse lasts several hours. A lunar eclipse may be total for two hours, during which time the moon is crossing the umbra of the earth's shadow.

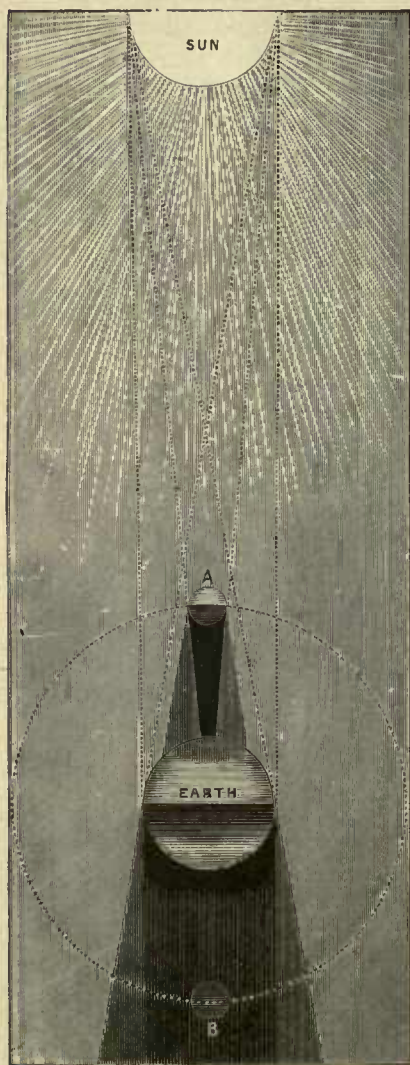
116. Frequency of Eclipses.—Solar eclipses are more frequent than lunar eclipses. The reason can be seen by examining Fig. 28. In a lunar eclipse the moon crosses the cone of the earth's umbra. In a solar eclipse she crosses a prolongation of the same cone toward the sun, which is equal to a broader part of the cone. But in any one place there are more lunar than solar eclipses, because a lunar eclipse is seen wherever the moon is visible, while a solar eclipse is visible over a small territory. A total or an annular solar eclipse is, in any one place, an event of very rare occurrence. There has been no total solar eclipse in London since 1715, and there was none for more than five hundred years before that date.

117. Causes of Eclipses.—Whenever the sun or moon is eclipsed, some parts of the sun, moon, and earth must be in line. It is evident they can not be in line, with the moon in the middle, except at conjunction, and therefore a solar eclipse must take place at the passage of the moon from old to new. The sun, moon, and earth can not be in line, with the earth in the middle, except at opposition, and therefore a lunar eclipse must take place at full moon.

But opposition and conjunction do not always bring eclipses. The reason is evident: the moon is not always at the intersection of her orbit with the ecliptic when she is at conjunction or opposition.

The moon passes the nodes, or, in other words, crosses the ecliptic, during every revolution round the earth; and yet there is not always an eclipse. But the reason of this is also plain: the sun and earth are not always in line with a node when she passes it.

FIG. 28.

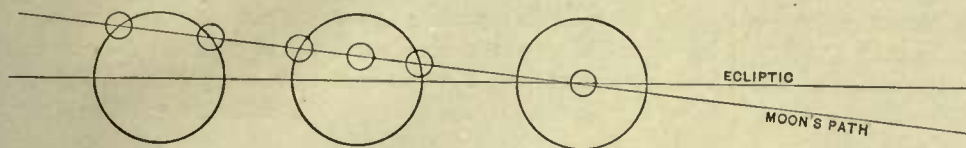


Explanation of Solar and Lunar Eclipses.

is carried forward over a long zone or band of territory about a hundred miles in width. A total solar eclipse

The moon's path on the heavens crosses the ecliptic at an angle of 5° . In other words, the plane of her orbit and the plane of the earth's orbit intersect at an angle of 5° . It is evident, from Fig. 29, that some parts of the

FIG. 29.



earth and moon may be in line, though not their centers, both just before and just after she passes a node.

A line joining the points where the moon's path on the heavens crosses the ecliptic, passes through the nodes of the moon's orbit. When the earth and sun cross that line, twice a year, they "pass the nodes." Students generally understand the circumstances of eclipses better by studying a few records of eclipses from almanacs of successive years:

1882.—May 17th, solar eclipse; November 11th, solar eclipse.

1883.—April 22d, lunar eclipse; May 6th, solar eclipse; October 15th–16th, lunar eclipse; October 30th, solar eclipse.

1884.—March 27th, solar eclipse; April 10th, lunar eclipse; April 25th, solar eclipse; October 4th, lunar eclipse; October 18th, solar eclipse.

1885.—March 16th, solar eclipse; March 30th, lunar eclipse; September 8th, solar eclipse; September 23d, lunar eclipse.

From these records the student sees there are two eclipse periods in every year—evidently at the passage of the nodes by the earth and sun. These periods come earlier every year, a result plainly due to the backward movement of the nodes on the ecliptic. The record of 1883 can be explained by remembering that the earth and sun move very slowly from the node, while the moon crosses the heavens in a little less than fifteen days. In 1883 the earth remained at the nodes long enough for the moon to be eclipsed and then cross the heavens to eclipse the sun fourteen or fifteen days afterward. The record of 1884 shows that the moon may partially eclipse the sun on one side, cross the heavens to be eclipsed herself fourteen days afterward, and then cross back to eclipse the sun twenty-nine days afterward.

The student will not be surprised to learn that the slow motion of the sun and earth, together with the rapid motion of the moon, renders it impossible for the two former bodies to pass the moon's nodes without an eclipse.

From the record of 1882 it is clear that there is a period of less than six months between two passages of the nodes by the sun and earth. Therefore, if this event takes place just at the beginning of the year, they will pass again in less than six months, and will thus reach the beginning of the third eclipse period within the year. When there are seven eclipses in a year, four must be eclipses of the sun. If there are but two, both are eclipses of the sun.

There can not be more than seven or fewer than two.

A further account of the moon will be given in the General Account of the Solar System, Part II.

CHAPTER VI.

THE PLANETS AND THEIR MOTIONS, AND HOW TO OBSERVE THEM.

118. The planets are stars which, like the earth, revolve round the sun as a center. Five of these bodies, Mercury, Venus, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, can be seen without a telescope; and the last four are so often in the sky above us just after dark, that there is no difficulty in knowing them by sight, and in seeing and understanding their motions. (See Art. 187.)

It is the object of this chapter to give such an intelligible account of these movements, in the order in which an observer will see them, that any sensible student may use it to gain what will be a life-long pleasure and advantage, viz., the power to look at the changes in the heavens with intelligent recognition.

119. The Superior Planets.—For reasons which will be made clear a little further on, the planets are divided into two classes, called Superior and Inferior Planets. Jupiter, Saturn, and Mars are the superior planets which can be seen with the unaided eye.

120. How to find Jupiter, Mars, or Saturn.—Except when they are very near the sun, Jupiter, Mars, and Saturn can be seen at some hour of every clear night. The student's knowledge of them will probably be chiefly gained by watching them in the evening before bedtime, and it is well to form a habit of observing them at dark. These planets come into the evening sky from the east. It will give reality to the study of them if the student who begins this chapter will get a good almanac, and find whether they are, or when they will become, evening stars. Three steps are to be taken: 1. To find out when they are evening stars. 2. The student must

know where in the heavens to look for them. 3. He must understand how they can certainly be known when seen. A few words will be said on each subject.

121. I. How to tell when a Superior Planet is in the Evening Sky.—They come in at opposition, they go out at conjunction. The dates of the oppositions of Jupiter, Mars, and Saturn are given in any good astronomical almanac under the following symbols; \oslash means opposition; \odot , the sun; $\oslash \ 2 \ \odot$, opposition of Jupiter with the sun; $\oslash \ 2 \ \odot$, opposition of Saturn with the sun; $\oslash \ \delta \ \odot$, opposition of Mars with the sun.

The publishers of this book will send out with every copy sold a printed slip containing any oppositions coming within three years from the current year. The oppositions of Saturn come once in about a year; those of Jupiter, once in thirteen months; those of Mars, once in twenty-six months. About two months before opposition, a superior planet can be seen in the evening as early as ten o'clock. For this reason it is best to begin observation about two months before opposition. The planets are not called "evening stars" until they rise at sunset; and they are called "morning stars" from the time that they rise with the sun. The best almanacs give the times of risings of the planets.

122. II. In what Part of the Sky must these Planets be looked for?—They are always found in the zodiacal constellations, and very near the ecliptic. They are never more than $2\frac{1}{2}^\circ$ from the ecliptic. The student who knows the constellations of the zodiac can tell almost at a glance whether Saturn, Jupiter, or Mars is visible. An unknown star of the first magnitude seen very near the ecliptic by a person familiar with that circle is sure to be a planet. Intelligent acquaintance with the heavens is not possible without the knowledge of the ecliptic. In the introduction to this book, "Directions how to learn and teach the Constellations," will be found careful directions for learning the ecliptic. All the zodiacal constellations visible at one time can be learned in a few evenings.

It is perhaps well to add a few words about each superior planet, and to say that they can be most easily identified at and near opposition, both because they are then brightest, and because we know we must look for them at dark not far from the eastern horizon. Jupiter can be recognized at any time of night when he is known to be above the horizon, because he will be the brightest star visible unless Venus is present; and he can easily be distinguished from her by the test of planetary motion, which will presently be explained under III.

Near opposition, Mars will be as bright as any star in the east except Jupiter. It is easy to know whether Jupiter is visible, and then Mars can be distinguished by his red color. Mars varies in luster more than any of the three, and could hardly be identified by an inexperienced observer when he is more than eight months from opposition.

Saturn varies less than any of the three. An observer must find him chiefly by knowing the zodiacal stars near the ecliptic, and thus recognizing a stranger among them. He is about as bright as the brighter first-magnitude stars.

123. III. How the Planets can certainly be known when seen.—When the observer thinks he has found a planet, or wishes to distinguish between two or three stars, one of which he supposes to be some planet, he can make perfectly sure by the test of planetary motion now to be described. The stars are divided into planets and fixed stars. The fixed stars can never be seen to approach or recede from one another except by trained observers using instruments of the most delicate and extreme accuracy.* For this reason the constellations keep the same figures, coming and going as if painted on a rolling panorama. But the planets recede from one star and approach another. Our study of them consists chiefly in watching this motion. It can not be done without care and patience, but, when the student gets fairly at it, it becomes very interesting work.

When the student first sees a planet, or a star supposed to be one, he notes very carefully its position in regard to fixed stars near it. Very often it will be found in line with two other stars, as seen in Fig. 30.

In this case any movement will at once be indicated by the planet being out of the line (breaking line), unless the line is nearly parallel with the ecliptic. Sometimes it forms regular figures, as triangles, right or isosceles, and then movement shows

FIG. 30.



itself very soon by the alteration of the figure. The motion of Mars can usually be detected in forty-eight hours; that of Jupiter in a week or less. Jupiter and Venus can be readily distinguished from one another by the rapidity of the movement of the latter, which becomes evident after an interval of twenty-four hours. Saturn moves more slowly than any of the planets seen with the unaided eye; but the movement can always be detected when his position in relation to other stars is well observed.

All this observation requires perseverance, but the student should be encouraged by knowing that it affords valuable training for a faculty much neglected in our schools, viz., the power of intelligent observation. As fast as a planet moves out of one figure that he has discovered, he seeks to find another. He notes the direction of the motion, and whether the planet is north or south of the ecliptic. A star which does not move among the stars can not be a planet.

124. Motions and Appearances of Superior Planets.—There are two important motions which are the key to our knowledge of a superior planet. They are called the Synodical Revolution and the Sidereal Revolution.

125. The Synodical Revolution.—Let us suppose the observer begins at the planet's opposition with the sun. It will be found at dark just above the eastern horizon; and, as the sun is known to be just below the western

* The trained observers have detected the motion of only a few.

horizon, the planet is seen to be opposite the sun. If it is on the ecliptic, it is in a straight line with earth and sun; but since it is always on or very near the ecliptic, it is always very nearly in line at opposition.

Since the planets, like all other heavenly bodies, have an apparent diurnal revolution owing to the earth's rotation upon her axis, we must, to avoid confusion, watch the synodical revolution at the same hour of the evening. Some time about dark is most convenient.

The observer, beginning at dark, finds the planet then above the eastern horizon. If, after an interval of three or four weeks, he observes the planet at the same hour, he will find it, like the constellations of fixed stars, situated farther from the eastern horizon and nearer the western. If, at intervals of two or three weeks during several months, he takes a look at dark, he will again and again find the planet, like the fixed stars, farther from the eastern horizon and nearer the western; and finally it would last be seen at dark just above the western horizon. The observer would have reason to think that after its disappearance it was on the western horizon with the sun at sunset; and, as it was always seen very near the ecliptic, it would be evident that it must at the same time be very nearly in line with earth and sun. This is the planet's conjunction with the sun.

If, after this, the student made observation just before day in the morning, the planet would be found just above the eastern horizon. If, during some months, it was occasionally observed at that hour, it would gradually be found farther and farther west, until it would finally be seen for the last time just above the western horizon. Then it would again be opposite the sun, or "in opposition" with him. It could again be seen at dark in the evening just above the eastern horizon. Between the two oppositions it would appear to have made a complete revolution westward around the earth. This revolution would have been so like the annual motion of the fixed stars, that the observer would suspect that it was also apparent, and due to the earth's annual motion around the sun. (See "Talks with Observers," p. 82.)

But the fixed stars revolve round the earth in a year, crossing the evening or morning sky in six months, while Saturn would take a few days more than twelve months to complete his revolution; Jupiter would take thirteen months and Mars twenty-six.

126. Real or Proper Motion.—The difference in the times of apparent revolutions of the planets and the fixed stars would be explained by the planet's motion among the stars, which the observer would have seen while watching the synodical revolution. It has already been

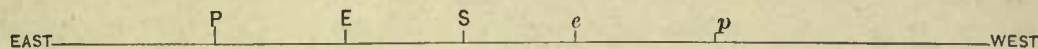
noticed in 123. The planets move eastward among the stars. It will perhaps sound a little absurd to speak of a planet as having two motions, one of which is eastward and the other westward in direction. If the western motion were not apparent, it would be absurd. The student can form an idea how the two motions appear to go on together, by imagining the celestial sphere revolving and carrying the planet west, while the planet at the same time moves east on the sphere. Thus, a globe might revolve in one direction, and carry an ant with it, while the ant walked slowly round the globe in the contrary direction. We have reason to think the eastern motion of a planet among the stars a real motion, for the earth herself moves east, and so could not make the planet appear to move east.

Now the planet would, at opposition, be at a point among the stars, and when this point had in six months revolved to the western horizon, the planet would be at some distance east of it, and would thus be kept longer above the western horizon. Since Mars moves east among the stars faster than Jupiter, and Jupiter than Saturn, Mars would be detained longest in the evening or morning sky, and Jupiter would be delayed longer than Saturn.

The apparent western revolution of the superior planets round the earth is called a Synodical Revolution. This is usually defined as a period at the beginning and end of which a planet occupies the same position in regard to the earth and sun.

127. Variation in Apparent Size, and Definition of a Superior Planet.—If the planet supposed to be watched were Mars, our observer would see another fact very plainly. Mars evidently diminishes in apparent size when crossing the evening sky, and increases while crossing the morning sky. Jupiter and Saturn also vary through the same period, but the change is not so marked.

FIG. 31.



Let us suppose that the line above (see Fig. 31) represents that drawn from east to west through earth and sun at sunset.

S is the sun's place; E, the earth's place; and *e*, the point of the earth's orbit lying west of the sun. At opposition the planet was east of the observer at sunset. As he was evidently farther from the sun than the earth was, we mark his position at P. For the same reason we put the mark *p* for his position in the west at conjunction, beyond the sun and also beyond the point of the earth's orbit. Now, if the planet was at the point marked *p*, it explains why he decreased in apparent size.

While P and p are at the same distance from the sun, they are at very unequal distances from the earth at E . When the planet is at P , the observer at E is on the side of the earth's orbit nearest him; but when he is at p , the observer at E is on the side of the earth's orbit most distant from him. From E to e is a diameter of the earth's orbit, a line more than 185,500,000 miles long. Therefore, Mars appears larger when seen at P than at p , because he is more than 185,500,000 miles nearer. Thus this increase of the superior planets in apparent size confirms the belief that they are at all times farther from the sun than the earth is. This is what we mean by a superior planet. It is always at a greater distance from the sun than the earth is. At opposition the planet and earth are in line with each other and the sun, on the same side of the sun; at conjunction, on opposite sides.

The student must use this line to get the positions in nature, as he can see them. He should make sure of this by pointing to them. The diagram is useless except for this purpose.

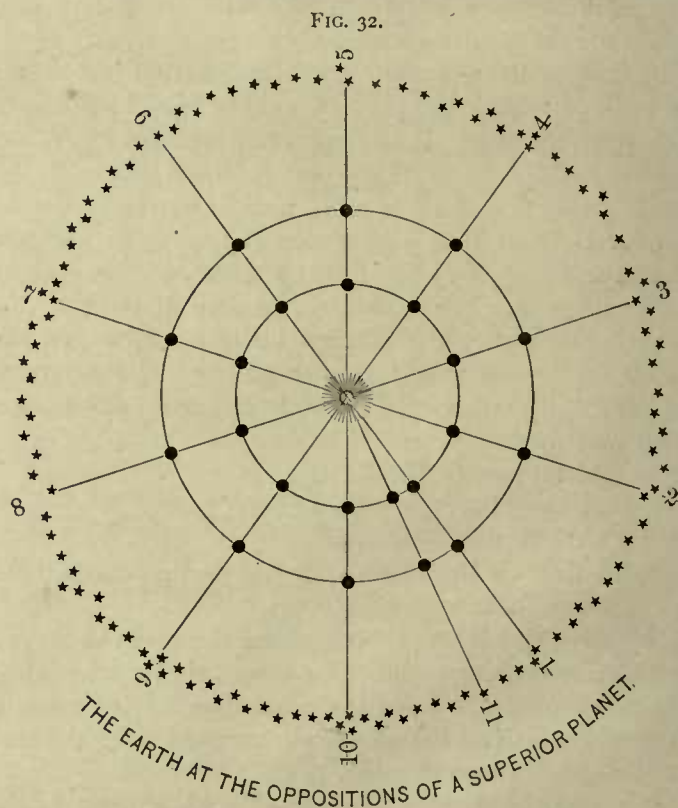
The fact that Jupiter varies less than Mars in apparent size, and Saturn less than Jupiter, can be accounted for by supposing that the two latter are so very far from earth and sun that an approach of 185,500,000 miles nearer is comparatively small.

128. The Sidereal Revolution.—A planet always lies in a straight line between the sun and some star-group, since stars are all round the sun; but at the opposition of a planet we can know the star-group, for we are ourselves in line between it and the sun. At dark a line from the sun, which is just below the western horizon, through the earth, reaches an ecliptic point just above the eastern horizon, and at opposition the planet is seen at dark very near it. We can see that he is in the same direction from us that we are from the sun at sunset. If we sit up till midnight we see an ecliptic point on the meridian, and the planet at opposition is very near it. The four or five stars nearest the planet and this point are a group. As we are between this ecliptic point and the sun, we are between the sun and this group. So is the planet, though he seems to be among the group, but we know this is the effect of projection. So we can be quite sure the planet is in line between the sun and this group. If we are not quite in line with the sun and planet, we are between the sun and the same star-group.

After a year's time the same star-group would be above the eastern horizon at dark, and we should again be between the sun and this group, but the planet would not be there. He would have moved east and would be below the horizon. But after a while he would again be above the eastern horizon at dark, and, of course, opposite the sun. He would be between the sun and a

second star-group. We should know it, for we also should be between the sun and the same group. We should see the first and second group both lying on the evening sky, the ecliptic running through them, and the second group farthest east. Then, after a long interval, the planet would again be in opposition. We should see him between the sun and a third star-group. The three groups would lie on the evening sky along the ecliptic, the last one being farthest east. The two intervals between the three would be about equal. After a number of oppositions, there would be a chain of these groups, at equal intervals, extending entirely across the evening sky and along the ecliptic; and we should know that our planet had been between the sun and every one, for we should have been there at the same time. After a still longer time, the star-groups would make a ring round the whole heavens, both above and below the horizon. We should know that the planet had been between the sun and every one. As they would evidently lie in a ring all round the sun, it would be evident that the planet had made a complete revolution round the sun (see Fig. 32).

Now, unless the annual motion of the stars is real—



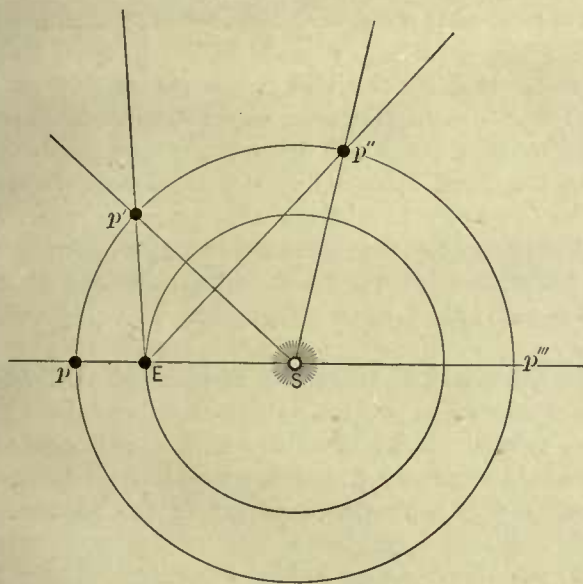
unless the earth is at rest, and the sun and stars are in motion—it is clear our supposed planet revolves around the sun. This revolution of a planet from one star-group

back to the same is called the planet's Sidereal Revolution.

129. It would take Jupiter nearly twelve years to make a sidereal revolution, and it would take Saturn nearly thirty. But the case is quite different with Mars. His motion among the stars is very rapid, and between two successive oppositions he would be seen moving rapidly east through many zodiacal constellations. But when the second came, he would be only 48° in advance of his first position. It is a reasonable conclusion that Mars makes a full sidereal revolution, and goes 48° beyond, while he makes one synodical revolution. (See "Talks with Observers," p. 82.)

130. **Times of Revolutions.**—The student of geometry knows that we can not estimate circular or angular motion except from the center. But we are not at the center of the motions of the planets. Fig. 33, in which E represents the earth's position, and p, p', p'', p''' , positions of a superior planet, shows that we could not see

FIG. 33.



the planet where it would be seen by an observer at the center, except when we are in line with it and the center. This is the position of sun, earth, and planet at conjunction and opposition. But we can not see the planet at all at conjunction. It is this that makes opposition so important a period in the study of a planet.

Now, when a sidereal revolution begins at an opposition, it does not end at one. We know the planet has completed its revolution because we see it at an opposition, in advance of the point from which it started. Therefore, we can not estimate the length of a sidereal revolution by counting days. But we can count the

days of a synodical revolution, and measure the angular distance traveled. Since the synodical revolution depends on the motion of the earth and planet both, and neither moves through exactly equal spaces in equal times, both the days and distance vary a very little. But we can take the average, or mean, of many observations. Then the length of a sidereal revolution can be found by a question like the following: If the mean motion of Mars is $360^\circ + 48^\circ$, or 408° , in 779 days, how long will it take Mars to travel 360° ? The answer, 687 days, is the period of the sidereal revolution of Mars.

131. **Discussion of Appearances.**—The apparent western revolution of the planets is much more conspicuous than their real eastern motion, because in the first case they move from east to west of *ourselves*. But the whole matter will be made clearer by considering the appearances produced by motion on earth. If we walk past an object at rest, it appears to move in a direction contrary to our own, and at last passes out of sight. But let us suppose ourselves walking on a straight road, and seeing in advance of us a person walking more slowly in the same direction. He seems to fall back, and we catch up and pass him, but he remains in sight longer than the object at rest. If he quickens his pace, still, however, walking more slowly than we do, he still appears to fall back, but more slowly, and he keeps longer in sight of us.

132. The fixed stars are objects at rest, and Mars, Saturn, and Jupiter are like persons walking in the same direction with ourselves, but at different degrees of speed, round a circle. When a planet and the earth come in line at opposition, it is because the earth, moving east faster, catches up with the planet and passes him. When they come in line at conjunction, it is because the earth has traveled 180° ahead of the planet, and is coming round the circle behind him, to catch up and pass him again. But the earth's motion is without jolt, jar, noise, or exertion on our part, and we do not feel that we are moving, so we take the appearance of the planet falling back to be the real motion.

133. **Apparent Retrograde Motion.**—This is a very important apparent movement; but the description of it has been postponed in order to avoid confusion. Thus far all the facts and appearances can be explained almost equally well on the supposition that the earth is at rest, while sun, planets, and stars move round it with varying degrees of speed, as on the supposition that the sun is the center of motion around which earth and planets revolve. But it is otherwise with the interesting movement about to be described. It can be better explained on the theory of the earth's motion. This movement had great influence in making astronomers believe the

Copernican theory, by which the sun is supposed to be the center, and the planets to revolve round him.

134. For a few weeks before and after the opposition of a superior planet, it seems to move west among the stars instead of east. If we supposed that this motion was real, not apparent, we should see, by the advance east among the stars at opposition, that the planets must travel longer and farther east than west. But the movement is apparent, not real.

135. The student will best understand the cause of this apparent western or retrograde motion by an experiment. On ground, level and open, for fifty feet radius, he must draw two concentric circles with radii of about twelve and eighteen feet. He is to have an assistant who walks slowly around the outer circle, while he himself walks around the interior circle, a little faster, but in the same direction. At intervals he comes up in line with his assistant and the center, on the same side of the center (or on the same radius), and passes his assistant. While walking on all parts of the circle, he notes the passage of his assistant's head over the background. The apparent and real directions of the walker's motion on the outer circle are the same, until just before the two come in line (on the same radius), and then the observer sees his assistant's head retrograde over the background, or move in a direction contrary to that in which the observer knows he is really moving. The position of the three, when in line, is that of S, E, and *p*, in Fig. 33. This is just the position of the earth and

a superior planet at opposition. They are in line on the same side of the sun.

There is nothing mysterious in this. When two walkers on straight paths walk with different degrees of speed in the same direction, the one in advance walking more slowly, and the one in the rear catching

up and passing the other, the fast walker will see the body of the slow walker move over a distant enough background in a direction contrary to that in which he really walks. In the circles of Fig. 34, the arrows indicate the movement of revolution, and it can be seen that a mover at and near *a* is not moving in the same abso-

lute direction with a mover on the outer circle, except when he is at or near *b*. The reason why the motion of the planet retrogrades near opposition only, is, the earth and planet are not moving in the same direction, except at and near that time. (See Note on Art. 135, p. 83.)

136. There is another point to be noticed. Jupiter retrogrades through a smaller angular distance than Mars, and Saturn than Jupiter. If the experiment with the circles is tried as before, except that the outer circle has a radius of twenty-five or thirty feet, it will be found that the walker on the outer circle retrogrades through a smaller angular distance than before.

137. To explain this retrograde motion, we must make one of two suppositions: 1. The earth moves round the sun in a figure nearly a circle, and, catching up in line with the superior planets, makes them seem to move backward, like the walker in the experiment with the circles. 2. The earth is really at rest, and the planets are in motion, but the planets, for no reason at all that we can conceive, imitate the movements they would appear to have if the earth moved.

It is clear that the first is the more reasonable supposition.

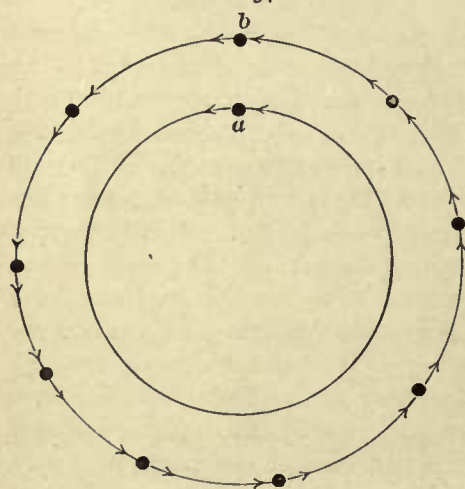
138. Several conclusions follow: 1. This motion of the planets toward the west is apparent. 2. Since the earth's motion gives the planets an apparent motion among the fixed stars, while the fixed stars themselves are too far away to change place among each other in consequence of the earth's motion, the planets must be a great deal nearer to us than the fixed stars. 3. Mars is nearer to us than Jupiter, and Jupiter than Saturn.

139. Summary of what the Student should observe.—The student will probably think that, if he must watch Jupiter twelve years and Saturn thirty, to become satisfied that they revolve round the sun, he will have to be contented with a blind acceptance of the statements of school-books.

In astronomy, as on other subjects, we accept the evidence of witnesses to fact. But on this, as on all scientific subjects, there is a great difference between a blind and an intelligent acceptance of testimony. We must know something of the nature of the facts, or we can not tell whether they are rightly interpreted. The motions here described consist largely of repetitions. But we can understand them perfectly, long before we go through with all the repetitions.

But the student who learns to look at the heavens with intelligence, will see a great deal more of the repetitions than he intends at first. The heavens are unrolled before us year by year, without any exertion on our part, and just at the time when we are most at leisure.

FIG. 34.



We must shut our eyes, or look down, to keep from seeing them. Thus the person who learns to understand the changes in the heavens is apt to become an observer for life.

The following phenomena should be observed: 1. The positions of one or two of the planets in regard to earth and sun should be noted near conjunction and at opposition, and thoroughly understood. 2. The decrease in brilliancy from opposition to conjunction should be noted. This is best seen in the case of Mars. 3. The general eastward motion of all these three planets should be noticed; also, the western or retrograde motion among the stars near opposition should be noted. 4. The positions among the stars for two successive oppositions should be noted, in the case of Jupiter and Saturn especially. This shows the advance eastward. 5. The apparent motion toward the western horizon should be noted, and especially the period during which each planet is in the evening sky. 6. Besides this, the positions of the planets in regard to the ecliptic must be noted. But the student must clearly understand how much, how little, this proves. It shows with entire truth that the orbits of these planets are in planes very near the ecliptic. But it *does not show the exact planes in which they move*. As we are sometimes a little to one side of the planes in which they move, sometimes a little to the other side, we see them a very little displaced. But it is perfectly correct to say that they are always so near the ecliptic because they move in planes differing so little from that in which the earth moves. In no way can the student understand this so well as by watching their position in regard to the ecliptic. (See Note on Art. 139, p. 91.)

The Inferior Planets.

140. Definition of an Inferior Planet.—Venus and Mercury are never seen near the point of the heavens opposite the sun. If they were not nearer the sun than the earth is, the earth would come nearly between them and the sun at some point of her revolution round that center, for they are always found very near the ecliptic. But we always see them not far from where we know the sun is situated. For this reason, and for others which will appear in studying them, they are supposed to move round the sun in orbits interior to the earth's orbit, and astronomers call them the "Inferior Planets." The student's knowledge of their motions must be chiefly gained from the study of Venus. Venus is very often situated conveniently for observation.

141. When and how to find Venus.—Venus is alternately evening and morning star for periods of 292 days each. She becomes evening star at what is called her

superior * conjunction with the sun, and she becomes morning star at her inferior * conjunction with the sun. The symbol of Venus is ♀; that of conjunction, ☿; that of the sun, ☉. The entries in the almanac are "☿ ♀ ☉ superior" and "☿ ♀ ☉ inferior." They are found at the proper dates. Besides these announcements, most almanacs have, in the beginning, another, giving the evening and morning stars for the year.

When Venus is known to be above the horizon in the evening, it is not possible to fail in identifying her, for she is found at dark in the west, and is far the brightest star visible. But she is too near the sun to be visible for some time after conjunction. The length of the delay depends on the angle made by the path of Venus with the horizon, and on clear weather. She should be looked for three weeks after conjunction, and after that once a week, at least, until she is found.

If the student prosecutes diligent search, she will be seen at first so early after sunset that no other stars will then be visible. The observer should note and remember the point of the horizon above which he first sees her.

142. Diurnal Revolution.—On the evening when Venus is first seen she will set in the west just as the new moon does. As all the other heavenly bodies do this, it will be plain that the motion is apparent and due to the earth's axial rotation. On the next evening she will again be seen in the west, and it will be evident that she must have risen on the same morning a little later than the sun, and during the day revolved (invisible) across the sky, keeping near to the sun on his eastern side, and becoming visible when he has set.

143. Real Motion.—After a few weeks the observer would see that, at the same hour of the evening at which Venus was first observed, she was higher above the horizon and farther east. It would be clear that this was due to a motion of the planet, real or apparent. As the earth herself moves, not west, but east, she could not make the planet appear to move east. Thus it would be plain that the motion of Venus from the horizon was her real or proper motion. From this it would also follow that she must have come into the evening sky by rising above the western horizon, and must have caught up with and passed the sun. It would be plain that her real motion was faster than the sun's in the zodiac, † and that she must therefore move faster than the earth. When she thus passes the sun, she is at conjunction.

After a long time, Venus would be far enough east at sunset to be visible when the stars were seen, and she would be found moving east among the stars. Just as soon as he could, the student should fix her place accu-

* This use of the words superior and inferior will be understood in studying the planets' motions.

† See Art. 47.

rately in relation to the fixed stars, so that he could detect her motion among them. She moves so rapidly that her changed position would be evident the very next evening. This rapid motion makes it very interesting work to trace the path of Venus among the stars.

144. Venus and the Ecliptic.—One point which should be noticed in watching her is the position of her path in relation to the ecliptic. She keeps very near it, and the student should note whether she is north or south of it.

145. Elongations, etc.—The observer, watching Venus, would see her continue to get higher above the horizon, and farther east among the stars. The earth's motion in her orbit would cause many constellations in which Venus had been seen to go out of sight behind the western horizon. Finally, 219 days after superior conjunction, the almanac would contain the notice " ♀ gr. El. E.," or the greatest Eastern Elongation of Venus. That is, Venus would have reached her greatest height above the western horizon, and would afterward begin to approach it. Venus would be nearly half-way between the zenith and the horizon at the earliest hour at which she could be seen on the evening of her greatest elongation. Lines drawn from the observer's eye to Venus and the sun would make an angle of about 47° . The angle varies a very little at different elongations, but the almanacs usually give the exact number of degrees. It would be a good many days before the ordinary observer without instruments would perceive that Venus was getting nearer the horizon. After a time it would be very plain. But Venus would continue to move east among the stars until about 270 days after superior conjunction, when she would begin to move west among the stars, and would continue to do so while she remained in the evening sky. Finally, 292 days after Venus became evening star, the almanac would announce, " ♀ \odot inferior," and Venus would pass the sun again as she went down. But the observer would know the exact time by the almanac only, for he would see the last of Venus some days earlier. The observer should note the point of the horizon above which Venus was last seen. It would perhaps be a little north or south of the point above which she was first seen. Thinking of her motion in relation to the horizon only, and forgetting the movement among the stars, it would seem to the observer that the figure of her motion was a long half oval with its base resting on the horizon. The path of Venus up and down is oblique to the horizon, since it lies very near the ecliptic; and therefore the half-oval figure which she seems to describe slants northward or southward.

146. Increased Brilliancy.—It would be very evident to a person who watched Venus closely, that she in-

creased in brilliancy from the time she became evening star. She would be a splendid object when she left the evening sky. These facts would indicate that she was getting nearer to the earth all the time that she was evening star.

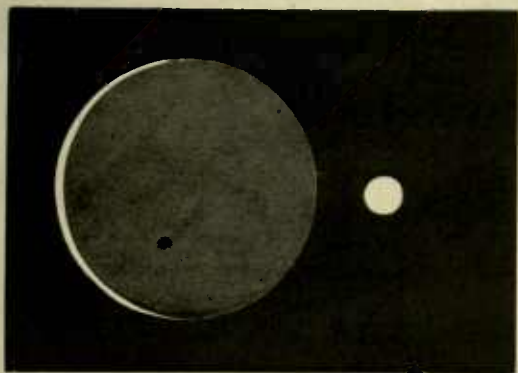
147. Explanation, or Theory.—If the student will cut a circle of about six inches in diameter from rather stiff paper, he will see that he can hold it west of him in such a position that it will look like a long oval, or even like a line. When held in this position, a body supposed to move around its circumference would be much nearer to the observer when on one side of it than when on the other. If the body moved in the direction in which the earth revolves round the sun, it would be at the greatest distance from the observer when it was going up, and nearest him when moving down. Now the earth's orbit, which is always in the direction of the sun, is always west of us at sunset, and only half of it is above the horizon. If Venus revolves around the sun in an orbit interior to the earth's orbit, it might be situated in such a plane as to look like a long oval, of which half was above the horizon—or even like a line. If Venus moves around it in the same direction in which the earth revolves round the sun, she would seem to move in such a long semi-oval, first up, then down; and when she passed the horizon moving up, she would be much farther from the earth and observer than when coming down. Thus this theory would account for her rising 47° and then coming down. And, as she would be getting nearer to the earth from the time that she rose above the horizon, her increased brilliancy would be accounted for. The fact that Venus is never seen opposite the sun would also be explained. It is because we never come between her and the sun.

148. Superior and Inferior Conjunction.—If Venus moves in an orbit interior to the earth's orbit, and in the same direction in which the earth moves round the sun, she must be farther west than the sun is when she passes him coming up into the evening sky. And, also, when she passes him moving down out of the evening sky, she must be nearer to the earth than the sun is. As Venus is always very near the ecliptic, she must be very nearly in line with sun and earth in both cases. At superior conjunction, an inferior planet, the sun and earth are nearly in line, with the sun in the middle. At inferior conjunction, they are nearly in line, with the planet in the middle.

149. Phases of Venus.—A telescope reveals some facts which strongly confirm this explanation of the motions of Venus. If, at superior conjunction, the earth and Venus are on opposite sides of the sun, she has the same face turned to the earth and sun. This is exactly

the position of the moon when she is full. Also, just after inferior conjunction, if she is then nearer to us than the sun is, she is in exactly the position of the new moon. Also, at her elongation, we see half of the side turned to the sun, just as we see the moon at her quadrature. Now, when Venus is observed through the telescope, she exhibits phases just as the moon does, except that she enters the evening sky a full circle and leaves it a crescent. But these changes proceed concurrently with the increase in apparent size. The full circle is much smaller than that of which the crescent forms part. Fig.

FIG. 35.



35 shows the relative proportions of Venus at her superior and inferior conjunctions.

About a month before the inferior conjunction, there is an entry in the almanac, "♀ at greatest brilliancy." The brilliancy of Venus depends on two things, her apparent size and the amount of illuminated surface. At the date indicated, the combined effect of the two is greatest. The phases of Venus show that, like the moon, she shines by reflecting the light of the sun.*

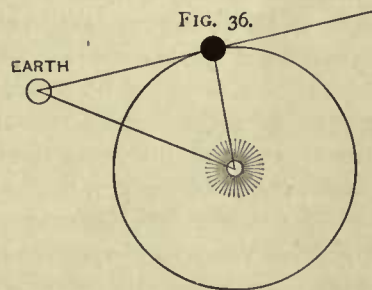
150. Transit of Venus.—The argument to show that Venus moves round the sun in an orbit interior to the earth's orbit is very strong without the aid of the facts learned from the telescope. It is irresistible with them; but it is still further strengthened. If Venus is crossing the ecliptic at her inferior conjunction, she is seen to pass across the face of the sun like a small black ball. This is called a Transit of Venus, and it never takes place at superior conjunction. Two transits only occur in a century, with an interval of eight years between them. The last two transits occurred in 1874 and 1882.

151. Venus as Morning Star.—After her inferior conjunction, we must look for Venus before sunrise in the morning sky. Her motions are the same as when she

is evening star, except that they occur in inverted order. The almanac records them in order.

152. Western or Retrograde Motion.—The retrograde motion of Venus among the stars has not the importance of the retrograde motion of the superior planets. It is not an apparent, or parallactic motion caused by our motion. If the student will take some small object, and revolve it in a circle between himself and the wall, he will see that in the parts of the circle nearest him and farthest from him, it moves in opposite directions against the background of the wall. Thus, Venus really moves up and down. We see both motions against the same background. One is in the order of the signs—Aries, Taurus, Gemini, etc.—and we are accustomed to call this eastward and direct, so we call the other retrograde.

153. Synodical Period.—Venus does not, like the superior planets, make an apparent revolution round the earth. But the period at the beginning and end of which she occupies the same position in regard to the sun and earth is called her synodical period. She does this at successive superior or inferior conjunctions, but she is too near the sun for us to see her. At her elongations, lines drawn between the sun, the earth, and Venus form a right triangle. The reader will see that this must be so, by examining Fig. 36. When the planet in the figure is seen at its greatest altitude, the line to the earth is a tangent to its orbit, and makes a right angle with the line from the planet to the sun. But Venus is at her greatest height above the horizon at her elongations.



So we can count her synodic period in days, by the time from her eastern or western elongation back to the same. The average time is 584 days. This is also the number of days between her superior conjunctions. She is evening star and morning star 292 days each (on an average). (See Note, p. 51.)

154. Sidereal Revolution.—We learn the period of the synodical revolution, as given above. Circular motion is measured from the center; but we are not only not at the center of the orbit of Venus, we are wholly out of it. But at her conjunctions, we can tell where she would be seen by an observer at the sun. At superior conjunction, when she is on the western side of the sun at sunset, an observer at the sun would see her where we do, on the western horizon. But at inferior conjunction, when she is between us and the sun at sunset,

* Mars shows a little indication of phases. We do not, in certain positions, see him a perfect circle.

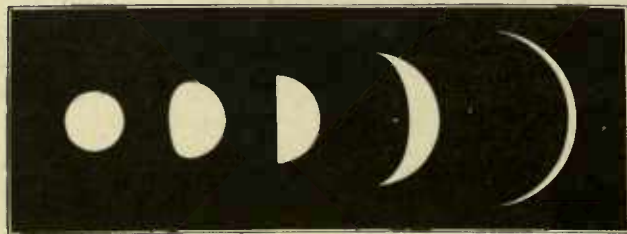
an observer at the sun would see Venus just 180° from where we do, viz., on the eastern horizon. Therefore, but for the motion of the constellations, we would say Venus had traveled 180° while evening star. But it is evident that Venus passes through every constellation that passes the sun while she is evening star. That is, Venus, while evening star, travels as far as the sun and 180° besides. The sun's mean daily journey is $\frac{360^\circ}{365\frac{1}{4}}$, or $.986^\circ$,

and his mean journey in 292 days is 288° . Therefore the mean distance traveled by Venus in 292 days is $180^\circ + 288^\circ$, or 468° . Her mean distance in one day is 1.6° , and she would travel 360° in 225 days. This is the period of the sidereal revolution of Venus. (See Note, p. 89.)

155. Mercury.—The synodical period of Mercury occupies 116 days, though his sidereal revolution takes only about 88 days; therefore, he is evening star every alternate 58 days. This event is recorded in the almanac by the symbols " $\odot \text{ ☿ } \odot$ sup." But though he comes so often, there are a good many difficulties in getting a sight of him. He is never more than 28° from the sun at his greatest elongation. His orbit differs from a circle more than that of any other planet;* and, when he is at perihelion and elongation at the same time, he is much nearer the sun. Besides, he gets farther from the ecliptic than any other planet.* The most favorable times for seeing him are when he is evening star in the spring, and morning star in the fall. He is very bright when he is in the field of vision, and can not be mistaken. He, is of course, to be looked for near the horizon and ecliptic. By watching the almanac in spring and fall, for his two conjunctions, the industrious student will be sure to see Mercury in the end.

The motions of Mercury are in all respects similar to those of Venus. He moves more rapidly. He does not vary in apparent diameter nearly so much as Venus, be-

FIG. 37.



Phases of Mercury, and its Comparative Size as seen at Different Times.

cause the diameter of his orbit, which measures the variation of his distance from us, is much less than that of Venus. (See Fig. 37.)

* Except the asteroids, to be hereafter mentioned.

CHAPTER VII.

THE ATTRACTION OF GRAVITATION.

156. After learning something of the motions of the planets, it is natural that we should desire to know the force which causes them to move in their orbits.

The mere fact that the planets move, does not need to be accounted for. If we roll a ball on a slightly rough surface, it continues to move after the hand is removed, but finally stops. In proportion as we lessen friction and the resistance of the air, its motion lasts longer. Therefore, it is believed that a body moving where there is no friction and no resistance of the air would keep on moving forever. The planets are placed where there is no friction and no resistance from the air, for they carry their atmospheres with them. The continued motion of the planets is regarded as a final proof of the law of inertia, viz., a body at rest will continue at rest until some force sets it in motion, and a body in motion will continue to move until some force stops it.

But on earth bodies in motion always move in straight lines unless some force deflects their motion. If they move in a curve, they change direction continually; and therefore the force must be constant, not instantaneous, in operation.

It has always been known that some force draws bodies toward the center of the earth, and that they move in straight lines unless some other force acts on a falling body, when it moves in a curve. Thus we may throw a stone horizontally, but, since the attraction of the earth affects it, it falls in a curve. If we revolve a key fastened to the end of a string, we project it in a straight line, as is shown as soon as we let go the string. The force of cohesion in the string, holding it to the center, makes it move in a curve.

We have proof that the earth's attraction may be modified, for, when we revolve a bucket of water rapidly, the water does not fall out. So we may surmise that the moon is kept from falling to the earth by her rapid motion, and that the earth's attraction makes the motion a curve.

157. Now the great mathematician, Sir Isaac Newton, proved that the attraction of matter is the force which makes the heavenly bodies move in curves; but his arguments were nothing like these, though he took for granted the known laws of motion in his reasoning.

158. Before the time of Newton, astronomers observed the heavenly bodies as we have described in the previous chapters, except that they had instruments for measuring angles, and they subjected everything to exact measurement. They measured the apparent diameters of sun and moon, the angles which inferior planets make

with the sun at their elongations, they measured the angles through which the superior planets retrograde, and a great many other things. Since Jupiter and Saturn revolve very slowly, and since it takes much repetition of observation to insure accuracy of result, the reader can see how much slow, patient, unobtrusive work somebody did before anything definite could be known. An astronomer called Tycho Brahe collected a vast mass of accurate information. He was fortunate enough to have some property, and to find a munificent King of Denmark, who built an observatory called Uraniburg, on an island for him, and gave him a comfortable salary, so that he could watch and measure the heavens in peace and quiet. He kept at it for more than twenty years.

159. Then an astronomer called John Kepler took Tycho's measurements, and, after a great deal of hard trying and thinking, came to certain very definite results about the times, distances, and orbits of the planets. They are called Kepler's Three Laws, and they are given below:

1. All the planets move from west to east in ellipses which have the sun for a common focus.

2. The radius vector of a planet describes equal areas in equal times. (The radius vector is the moving line from the planet to the sun.) This is illustrated in

Fig. 38. In order that this may be true, the planets must move fastest when near the sun.

3. The squares of the periodic times (sidereal revolutions) of the planets are to each other as the cubes of their mean distances from the sun.

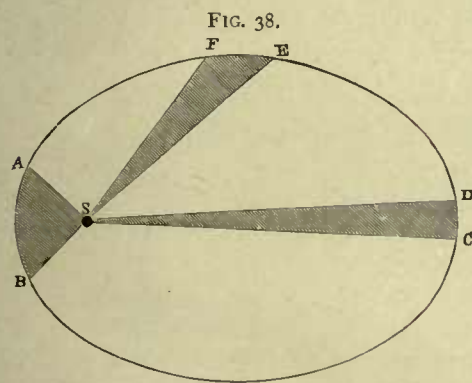


Illustration of Kepler's Second Law.

Now, philosophers did not consider it proved that the attraction of matter causes the planets to move in curved lines until the result of the motion had been accurately measured, and the force estimated in numbers, and shown to be mathematically equal to producing the result. To reason otherwise would be as absurd as to pronounce a piece of carpeting exactly sufficient to cover a floor, without measuring the floor and the carpeting. When, by the help of Tycho Brahe and Kepler, the times, the distances from the sun, the orbits, were accurately measured, then, and not before, it was time for somebody equal to the task to try to make a mathematical estimate of the force.

160. Sir Isaac Newton then took up the problem, and by a long chain of difficult calculation belonging to the higher mathematics showed that all the facts would be accounted for by the following law:

"Every particle of matter in the universe attracts every other particle with a force proportioned directly to the mass (or quantity of matter) and inversely to the square of the distance between them."

When we consider that, besides the sun, there are eight large planets with their moons, of various masses, and at various distances from the sun, we see what a complicated piece of calculation it is to show that this law accounts for the deflection of their motions from straight lines. Sir Isaac Newton did not finish this problem in its details, but he proved enough to make mathematicians quite confident that his solution was correct. There were certain irregularities in the motions which were not fully accounted for. These are called perturbations. Succeeding astronomers have largely supplied the details—notably two Frenchmen, Laplace and Lagrange—and fresh facts, learned by observation, have aided in this work; but there is still something to be done.

161. In 1846 there was a curious example of the way in which mathematicians have learned to reason. Some irregularities were detected in the motion of the planet Uranus. There was a very strong suspicion that some unknown planet caused these perturbations of Uranus, and two mathematicians, Mr. Adams, an Englishman, and M. Leverrier, a Frenchman, set themselves, unknown to each other, to calculation in order to find out the direction from which the disturbing influence must come. It was a remarkable evidence of their skill that both gentlemen directed attention to the part of the heavens in which the planet was found, and put astronomers to examining it with telescopes. The result was a double discovery, in which Leverrier had a little the advantage of time, and he is therefore called the discoverer of the planet, which was named Neptune.

162. Let us go over the steps of this statement. The merit of Copernicus was that he observed nature, just as is recommended in this book, and reasoned about these observations of himself and others. The merit of Tycho Brahe was that he went systematically to the work of taking mathematical measurements. This was a great step. Then Kepler applied these measurements to making a mathematical statement of the orbits, the times, the distances, the thing Newton was to account for. Then Newton estimated the force. This is regarded as one of the greatest achievements of the human intellect.

163. The Tides.—Twice a day the waters of the ocean move a short distance over the boundaries separating

sea from land, and twice a day they move back. This motion is called the tides. When the water is rising, it is called "flood-tide," and when it is falling it is called "ebb-tide." The highest point reached is called "high water"; the lowest, "low water." High or low water occurs about fifty-two minutes later every day.

It has long been known that the tides depend on the moon's motions; that they come later every day because the moon rises later. There is a vast swell, or tide-wave, on the half of the earth turned toward the moon. That we should account for this by the attraction of the moon is natural. But the waters not only rise on the part of the earth under the moon: they are at the same time high on the part of the earth turned from the moon, while they are low only between these opposite parts of the earth. We thus account for the high tide on the side of the earth turned away from the moon: The moon attracts most strongly the ocean nearest her, so she draws it up to a tide; but she attracts the solid earth more strongly than the ocean most distant from her, so she causes a tide in that ocean by drawing the earth away from it. But since the moon attracts the solid earth equally from any side of it on which she is situated, the position of the solid earth does not oscillate as the moon moves, but is permanently affected by her.

The attraction of the sun also affects the tides, but, since he is much farther from us than the moon, the effect produced is much smaller notwithstanding his greater mass. But sometimes the attractions of the sun and moon act in the same direction, sometimes in different directions. Twice a month the sun and moon are on the same or opposite sides of the earth, and then the tides are much higher. These are called spring-tides. Twice a month, when the moon is in quadrature, the attractions of sun and moon act at right angles to each other, and then the tides are lower than usual. These are called the neap-tides.

The highest tides occur when sun and moon, or both, are most nearly vertical, and when they are nearest the earth. Thus they vary with every position of the two bodies.

The tide does not accompany the moon and sun, but follows a little after them. This is the result of the inertia of matter, which can not at once be set in motion. The cause is the same that makes it more difficult for horses to start a wagon than to pull it after it is once set in motion.

The tides vary in different places from terrestrial causes. These belong to physical geography rather than astronomy.

164. Refraction.—Refraction is the bending of a ray of light in passing obliquely from one medium to another

of different density. The subject belongs to physics, but it is necessary to mention the effect the refraction of the atmosphere has on the apparent positions of the heavenly bodies. The effect is much greater nearer the horizon, since it depends on the obliquity of the rays of light, which decreases as we approach the zenith. Its effect is to make bodies on the horizon appear higher than they are. In consequence of refraction we see the sun and stars after they are below the horizon. In the latitude of Nashville, Tenn., observers are indebted to refraction for a good view of the fine first-magnitude star Canopus, which is at that place very near the boundary of the circle of Perpetual Disparition.

Astronomers, when making accurate observations, have great trouble with refraction. One trouble is that the effect varies with the density of the atmosphere, and thus it is sometimes difficult to allow for it.

165. Celestial Measurements.—Lines joining the sun and earth with each other and with a planet or the moon must form one line or a triangle. If we can get the number of degrees contained in two angles of such a triangle, we can draw a triangle similar to it, as any student of elementary geometry knows. Also, the sides of the triangle on paper will have precisely the proportions of the triangle in the heavens. One of these sides represents the distance between the earth and sun; another is the distance between the planet and sun. Thus, by measuring the lines on paper, and getting the ratio, we compare the distances of the earth and the planets from the sun. In this way the proportions of the solar system were long ago learned.

The simplest example of such a triangle is given by Venus and Mercury at their greatest elongations. The triangle, as seen in Fig. 39, is a right triangle. One of the other angles is very easily found by measurement. If lines be supposed drawn from the observer's eye to Venus and to the sun, they form an angle of the triangle represented in Fig. 39. At the time of her greatest elongation, Venus can be seen at sunset with a good telescope, and thus this angle can be measured without difficulty. Nothing will give so much reality in the student's mind to such triangles as to note the positions carefully in nature at the elongation of Venus, and, getting the angle of elongation from a good almanac (which always gives it), to draw a similar triangle on paper. If correctly drawn, the lines representing the distances of Venus and the earth from the sun have the proportion of two to three nearly.

If we can get one of the sides of such a triangle in miles, it is evident we can get the others, since we can get the proportions existing between the lines. This is done by making the

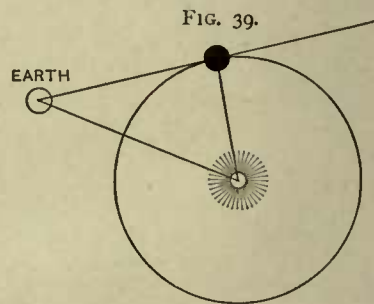
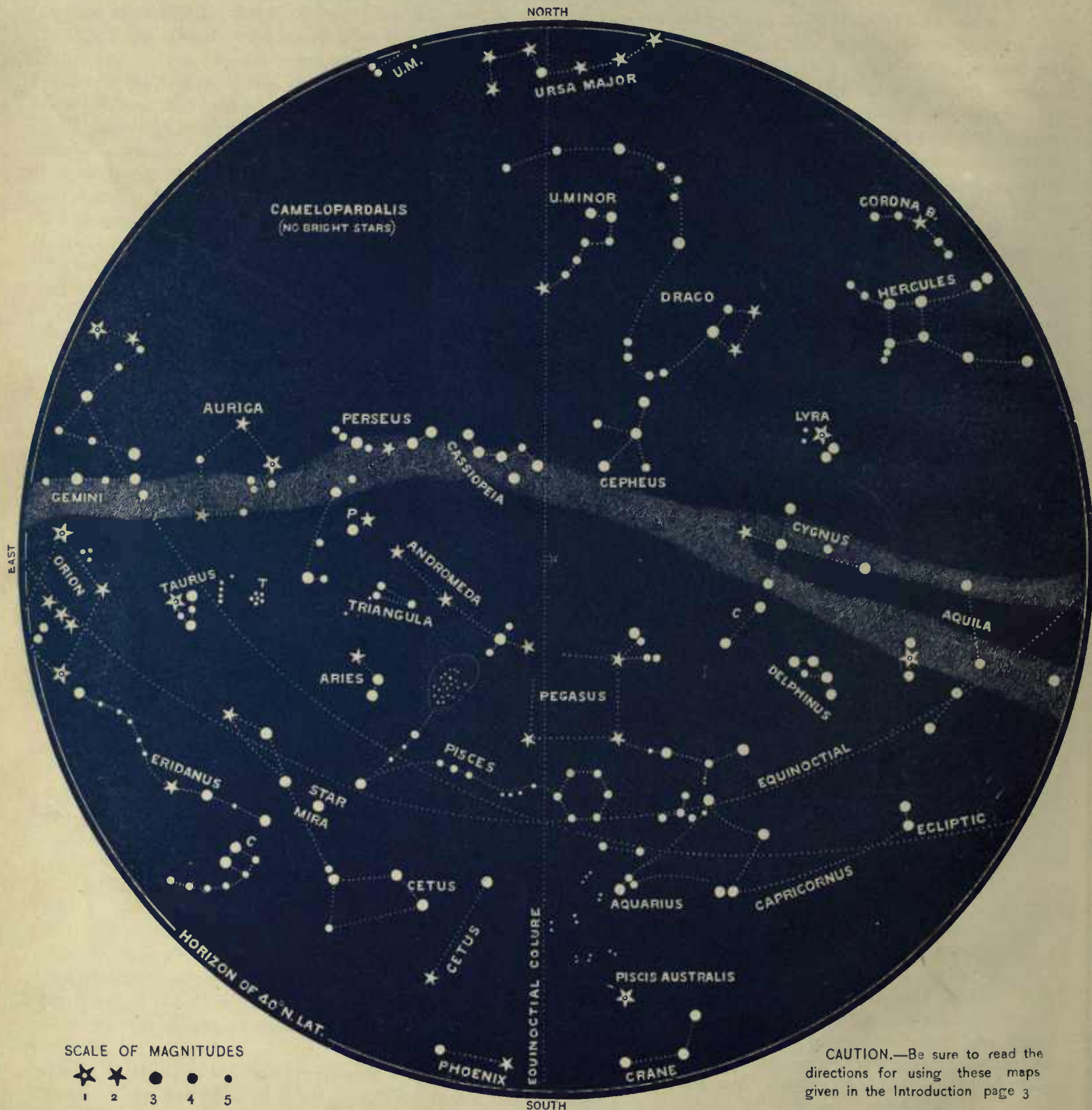


FIG. 39.

MAP III.

For Study of the Stars from October 22d to January 20th.



THE HEAVENS

AS SEEN

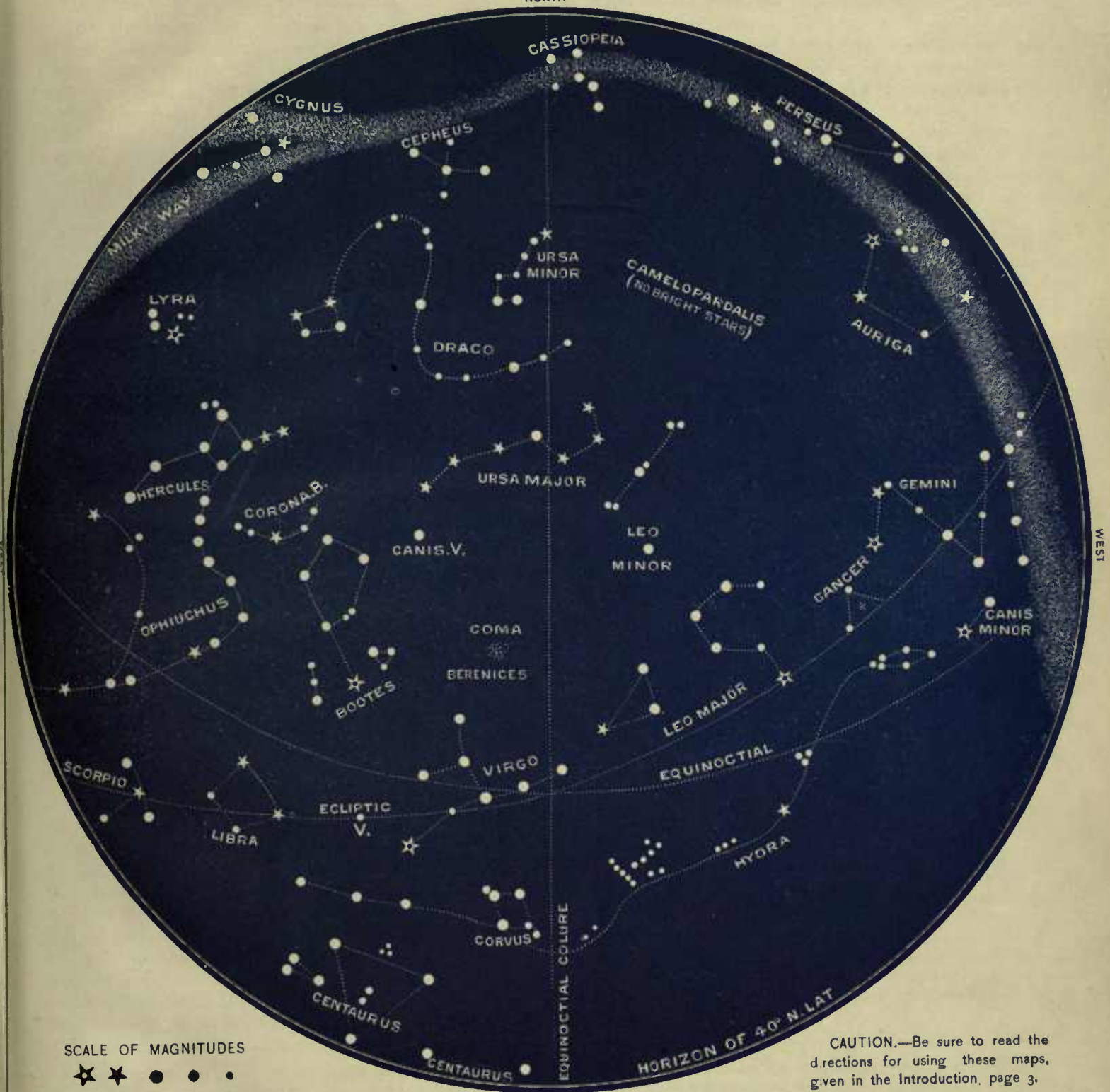
September 22d at midnight,
October 23d at ten o'clock,

November 7th at nine o'clock,
November 22d at eight o'clock.

MAP IV.

For Study of the Stars from April 26th to July 22d.

NORTH



SOUTH

THE HEAVENS

AS SEEN

March 21st at midnight,
April 20th at ten o'clock,

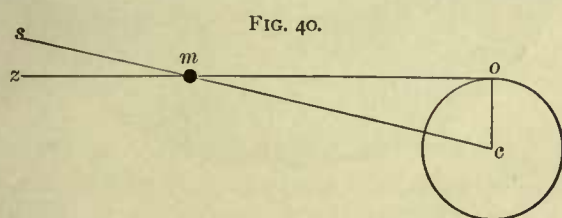
May 5th at nine o'clock,
May 21st at eight o'clock.

earth's radius the side of a triangle. In order to understand this, it is necessary to discuss parallax a little.

166. Parallax.—Let us suppose that we note the direction of some body from us by drawing a line to the center of its position from the center of ours. If we move off the line, the body is displaced on the background against which we see it. If we draw another line between the centers of the bases, it forms an angle with the former line. This change in the direction of a body, as seen from two different positions, is called its parallax. The retrograde motion of the planets is a parallactic motion. The angle measures the parallax, or difference in direction.

From the previous discussion of these apparent motions, the student knows that bodies undergo parallax in proportion to their nearness to us. The moon is the heavenly body nearest us. If two observers, at widely separated points of the earth, observe the moon at the same time, carefully noting her position on the starry sphere, so as to compare observations, they will find they do not see her against the same point of the sphere. Thus, the moon undergoes parallax, and, by measuring the angular distance between the two points of the sphere, we measure the moon's parallax.

When the moon is on the horizon, a line from her to the observer is a tangent to the earth. The earth's radius forms a right angle with it. In Fig. 40 the right triangle moc has for



one side the earth's radius, oc , a line of known length. The observer at o sees the moon in the direction omz . From the center of the earth the moon is in the direction cms . The difference in the direction of these lines is called the moon's horizontal parallax. It is the difference made in the direction of a body by seeing it from the surface, instead of the center, of the earth. The angle smz , or its vertical angle cmo , measures it. This angle bears such a relation to the moon's parallax, ascertained, as has just been related, by observation, that when we know the one we can compute the other. Then, in the triangle cmo , we have two angles, and a side, co , in miles. We easily find another side, cm , which is the moon's distance from the earth's center, in miles.

167. The Sun's Distance from the Earth in Miles.—In all the triangles formed by the sun, the moon, and a planet,

the earth's distance from the sun is one side. If we know this in miles, we can, from the proportional triangles, find all the other distances in miles.

Next to the moon, Mars and Venus are the heavenly bodies nearest us. Both undergo parallax when observed at widely separated stations on earth. When they are nearest to us, the parallax is greatest. Venus is nearest at her inferior conjunction, but we do not see her when the stars are visible, so we have ordinarily no fixed object by which to measure the parallax. But twice in a century Venus makes a transit over the face of the sun, and astronomers then use the sun's face as a background on which to estimate the parallax of Venus. The points to be observed are, the first and last contact with the sun, and the distance from the center. When this parallax is known, the horizontal parallax of Venus can be estimated, and her distance from the earth learned, as the moon's distance was found.

It is impossible to estimate the sun's parallax directly, but since the distance of Venus from the earth, and the sun's distance from the earth, form sides of the same triangle, we can find the sun's distance by knowing that of Venus.

The last transits took place in 1874 and 1882. The correct estimate of the sun's distance from the earth is so important that on both occasions the governments and scientific men of the civilized world interested themselves in fitting out expeditions to every quarter of the globe to make observations. There were years of preparation, in which new and accurate instruments were made, and even invented, and modes of investigation studied.

When Mars is nearest to us, he shows sensible parallax. He is nearest only at opposition. Every fifteen years the increase in the luster of Mars at opposition is much greater than usual. Fig. 32, page 42, shows that the oppositions of a superior planet take place at different points of its orbit. This variation in brightness, therefore, leads us to suspect that its orbit is not a perfect circle. The orbit of Mars is very eccentric, and this is the cause of the remarkable variation in brilliancy.

At long intervals Mars is at opposition when he is at the point of his orbit nearest the sun. Mars then rivals Jupiter in size. This occurred in 1877. As the apparent increase in the size of Mars was due to his near approach, it afforded a good opportunity for estimating his parallax, and from it that of the sun. This was done with great care in 1877.

NOTE.—In the next and the succeeding chapters much use will be made of information learned by the telescope. In the Appendix B there will be found an account of the telescope, which is taken principally from Lockyer's "Astronomy."

NOTE ON ART. 153, PAGE 47. **Elliptical Orbits.**—In Fig. 36, the line joining Venus and the sun is the radius of the planet's orbit. It is easy to see that a variation in the length of that line would make the angle at the earth vary in size. The angle is that given in the almanacs at the

greatest elongation of Venus; and the almanacs of different years show that it varies. This proves that the line varies, and that the orbit of Venus varies a little from a circle. It is an ellipse.

PART II.

GENERAL ACCOUNT OF THE SOLAR SYSTEM.

168. The Solar System consists of the sun and the heavenly bodies revolving round him as a center.

The revolving bodies are the planets, with their moons or satellites, revolving meteors, and comets. The earth, on which we live, is one of the planets, and therefore the Solar System is much more interesting to us than any other part of the heavens.

Chapter VIII will treat of the Sun; Chapter IX, of the Planets; Chapter X, of Meteoroids and Comets.

CHAPTER VIII.

THE SUN.

169. The sun* subtends an angle of $32'$, or a little more than half a degree. That is, it would take about three hundred and thirty suns, placed touching each other, to extend across the sky. The sun's diameter is 866,400 miles. This is nearly four times the radius of the moon's orbit, which is 240,000 miles. If, therefore,

the center of the sun were placed at the center of the earth, the sun's circumference would be nearly twice as far from us as the moon's orbit now is, and the sun's body would fill the whole intervening space (see Fig. 41). The sun's volume is 1,305,000 times as great as the earth's volume. But the sun is only about one

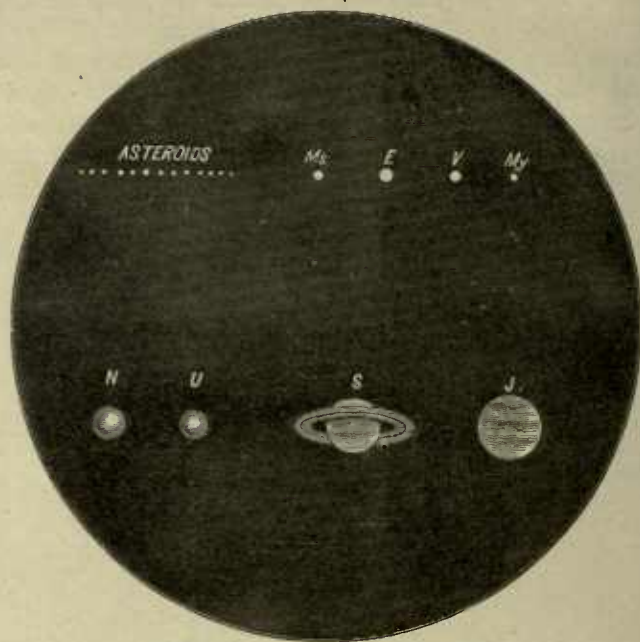
fourth as dense as the earth. Fig. 42 shows the size of the sun as compared with the chief planets. The black



FIG. 41.

circle represents the sun's disk. The mass of the sun is about 750 times that of all the planets and moons put together, and nearly 332,000 greater than the earth's mass.

FIG. 42.

*Relative Size of the Sun and Planets.*

170. **Light.**—The surface of the sun is ninety thousand times as bright as would be a candle-flame of the same size (Prof. Young).

It is a hundred and forty times as bright as the calcium or lime light, and compares with the voltaic arc as three and a half to one. On the sun's disk the brightness is greater at and near the center than at the circumference.

This is owing to the greater thickness of the sun's atmosphere, which a ray from the margin must penetrate in order to reach us. Rays from the center cross by a shorter line, as is shown in Fig. 43.

171. **Heat.**—Only a small portion of the heat radiated by the sun reaches the earth. Prof. Young says: "If

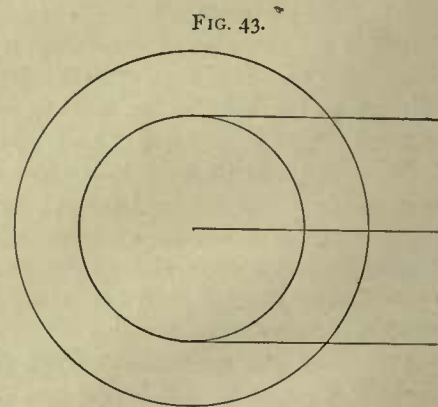


FIG. 43.

* In this book the study of the sun has been deferred until after the discussion of the motions of the solar system has been completed, in order to avoid a wide and long digression on the subject of the sun's telescopic appearance and physical condition. To ordinary students the investigation of the motions is the most important part of astronomy, because not only can all persons see these motions in nature, all must see them, and not to understand any important part of the order of nature brought before our eyes encourages habits of stupidity.

we could build up a solid column of ice from the earth to the sun two miles and a quarter in diameter, spanning the inconceivable abyss of ninety-three million miles, and if the sun should concentrate his power upon it, it would dissolve and melt, not in an hour, not in a minute, but in a single second."

The Spectroscope.

172. In studying the physical constitution of the sun much use is made of an instrument called a spectroscope, and it is therefore necessary that the principles of its construction should be understood by the student.

173. When light from a luminous gas or vapor (which has not been condensed by high pressure) passes through a prism, and is thrown on a screen in a darkened room, it is found to produce a band, or spectrum, consisting of a bright-colored line or lines, separated by dark spaces. In Plate I examples of such spectra are given. Spectra like this are called Bright-lined Spectra.

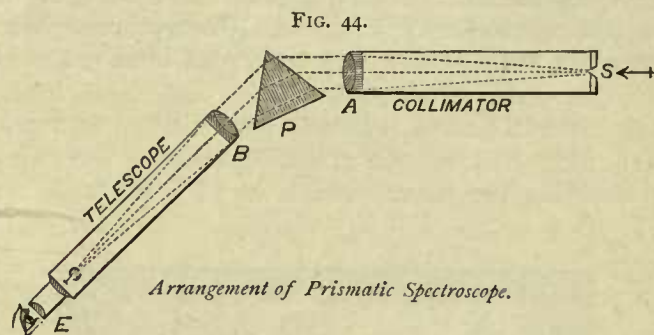
The various chemical elements can be brought to the state of vapor and made to produce spectra. Each substance has its own spectrum, different from all the others, and it always presents the same appearance when magnified to the same degree. The numbers of the lines in the spectra of the different elements differ greatly, and are of different colors, and thus each element can be identified by its spectrum. If a compound is used, its spectrum will exhibit the lines of all its elements.

174. When the light from an incandescent solid or liquid passes through a prism, the spectrum consists of bands of color containing no transverse lines. Gases condensed by high pressure give similar spectra. If, however, this light passes through a luminous vapor before entering the prism, it will consist of a colored band with transverse dark lines on it; and the dark lines will correspond exactly in position with the bright lines which would be contained in the spectrum formed by passing the light of the luminous gas through a prism. The position of the lines is due to the greater or smaller refrangibility of the rays producing them, and thus it is evident that the vapor absorbs rays having the same degree of refrangibility as those which produce bright lines. This is called a Reversed Spectrum.

175. By comparing the positions of the lines in bright and dark lined spectra, and finding the lines which have the same position in both, the vapor causing the dark lines can always be identified. This is shown in Plate I, where the spectrum of light coming from the sun is compared with the spectra of light coming from various chemical elements in the state of vapor.

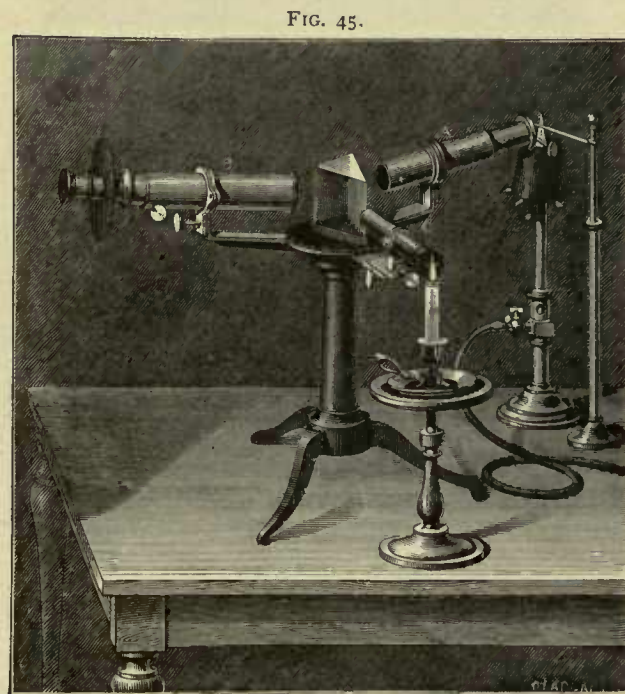
The knowledge of these facts has given rise to a new method of chemical analysis, of extreme delicacy and

great accuracy, which has the further advantage that it can analyze substances by light which is brought from any distance, however great. Thus it can be applied to



the light coming not merely from the sun, but also from the fixed stars.

It has given rise to an entirely new branch of astronomy. Spectrum analysis is thus far the great discovery in the lifetime of the present generation of middle-aged



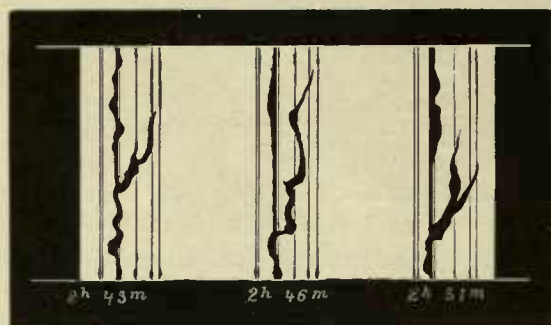
people. The essential parts of a spectroscope (Figs. 44 and 45) are—(1) the prism; (2) the collimator-tube, through which the light under study passes to the prism; and (3) the telescope. The lens A collects the light, and the telescope is used to magnify the image. Sometimes the light is made to pass through several prisms.

176. **Motion detected by the Spectroscope.**—The sensations of light and sound are both the results of wave-motion. The undulations of the air convey sound; those

of the supposed ether convey light. A sound of high pitch is produced by the shorter waves, and a sound of low pitch by the longer waves. The shorter waves of ether produce the more refrangible colors of light; the longer waves the less refrangible. Now a prism separates and arranges the colors on a spectrum, from red to violet, in the order of their refrangibility.

It is a well-known fact that the whistle of a moving train of cars has its pitch gradually raised if the train is approaching the hearer, and lowered if the train is re-

FIG. 46.



Changes in the C Line (September 22, 1870.)

ceding from him. It is generally true that sounds moving swiftly from us gradually fall in pitch; those moving toward us rise in pitch. It is found, when we examine the spectrum of a rapidly moving light, that the lines are displaced. If the light is moving from us, the lines are bent toward the end of the spectrum at which the red rays appear; but, when the light moves toward us, the lines are bent toward the violet rays (the most refrangible). Thus the spectroscope enables us to tell whether a luminous gas is in motion, and also whether it moves toward us or from us. Fig. 46 illustrates this displacement of lines.

177. Solar Spectrum.—The spectrum formed by passing the sun's rays through a prism is a reversed or dark-lined spectrum. It is crossed by a number of dark lines, and we can match in it the bright lines of many elements that we know. Prof. Young has given a table of the elements, some lines of which have been found in the solar spectrum.

List of elements certainly known to be in the sun:

hydrogen,	iron,	manganese,	nickel,
titanium,	copper,	magnesium,	cobalt,
calcium,	silver,	chromium,	barium,
vanadium,	silicon,	platinum,	sodium.

The existence of oxygen in the sun was at one time regarded as certain, but the results of the latest research, while not perfectly sure, are unfavorable to a belief in its presence there.

List of elements for whose existence in the sun there is some evidence, but less conclusive:

palladium,	uranium,	carbon,
molybdenum,	aluminium,	lead.
zinc,	cadmium,	

Of these elements, all except carbon are metals. We lack proof that some of the best known terrestrial elements exist in the sun, but it is thought that the result may be due, not to their absence, but to the sun's high temperature, since the spectra of luminous bodies are much affected by temperature. Within a few years Mr. Lockyer has been studying the spectra of the same substances under different degrees of heat, in order to apply the facts in explaining the spectra of the heavenly bodies.

The Sun's Telescopic Appearance and Physical Constitution.

178. The most competent authorities now believe that the sun is a great sphere of gas, extremely condensed at the center by the weight of the outer parts.

The sun's *Photosphere*, or visible surface, is a stratum or coating of luminous clouds floating in the sun's atmosphere, and surrounding the gaseous portion at the center. The *Chromosphere* surrounds the photosphere, and consists of very red flames extending about six thousand miles in every direction from the photosphere. The *Corona* is a faint pearly halo resembling the tails of comets, and it radiates from the sun to a distance about equal to the sun's radius.

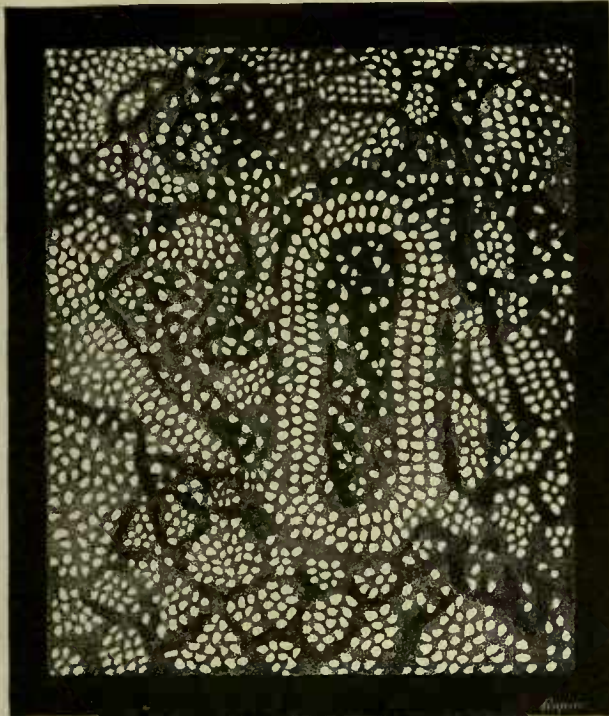
179. The Photosphere.—In a telescope of moderate power the photosphere seems to be composed of small incandescent grains separated by a somewhat darker medium. They form streaks and groups. With higher power of the telescope these granules seem formed of still smaller grains. They must, at different times, vary somewhat in form, having been compared by different observers to rice-grains and willow-leaves. They are really incandescent clouds floating in the sun's atmosphere, and composed of metallic vapors. Like the clouds on the earth's surface, they are partially condensed. With a low power of the telescope, the surface of the sun covered by the grains looks like curdled milk. The light of the

FIG. 47.



sun comes chiefly from these granules. They are seen in Figs. 47, 48.

FIG. 48.



Granules and Pores of the Sun's Surface. (After Huggins.)

180. Besides the granules, there are found on the sun brighter streaks looking a little like foam, and called faculæ. They are seen in Fig. 49. The faculæ are portions of the photosphere elevated above the rest, as is seen when they are on the edge of the sun. They then

FIG. 49.



Sun-spots and Faculæ. (From a Photograph.)

project a little beyond the circumference. They are most conspicuous near the edge of the sun, which, as was said, is darker than the middle.

181. Sun-Spots.—In addition to the granules and

faculæ on the surface of the sun, there are spots which have been the subject of a great deal of study. Three large and several small ones are on the portion of the sun's surface shown in Fig. 49. A sun-spot consists of two parts, the umbra and the penumbra (see Fig. 50). The umbra is in the center and appears dark, but this is merely in contrast to the brightness of the granulated photosphere. It is in reality filled with bright clouds.

FIG. 50.



The Great Sun-spot of 1865.—1. The spot entering the Sun's disk, Oct. 7th (foreshortened view). 2. Its appearance, Oct. 10th. 3. Central view, Oct. 14th, showing the formation of a bridge, and the nucleus. 4. Its appearance, Oct. 16th.

The penumbra consists of gray filaments, or long-drawn-out granules of photospheric matter, arranged so as to radiate from the center (see Figs. 50, 51, 52, 53). An irregular but well-marked outline separates the penumbra from both umbra and photosphere. The photosphere around the penumbra is often intensely bright. Some penumbral filaments end in granules of very bright matter. These appear to sink and dissolve, while others

take their places. The penumbra seems to be drawing in luminous matter all the time. In a few of the spots, the inner ends of the penumbral filaments curve spirally, and the spots revolve as if affected by a cyclone. Large spots sometimes seem to have two different centers of cyclonic action. But the revolution does not last, and in fact such spots are not numerous.

Sun-spots are usually circular when fully formed. Their formation is gradual; their coming being indicated by faculae at the point, and by small black dots which grow larger, and finally a spot is developed which lasts, on an average, two or three

FIG. 51.

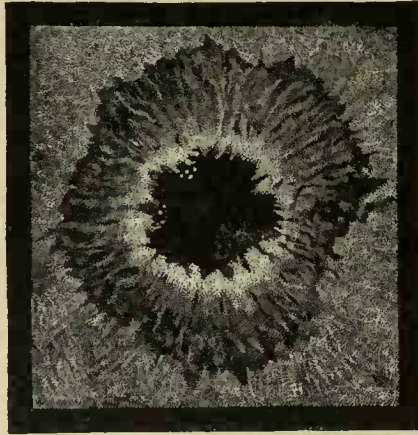
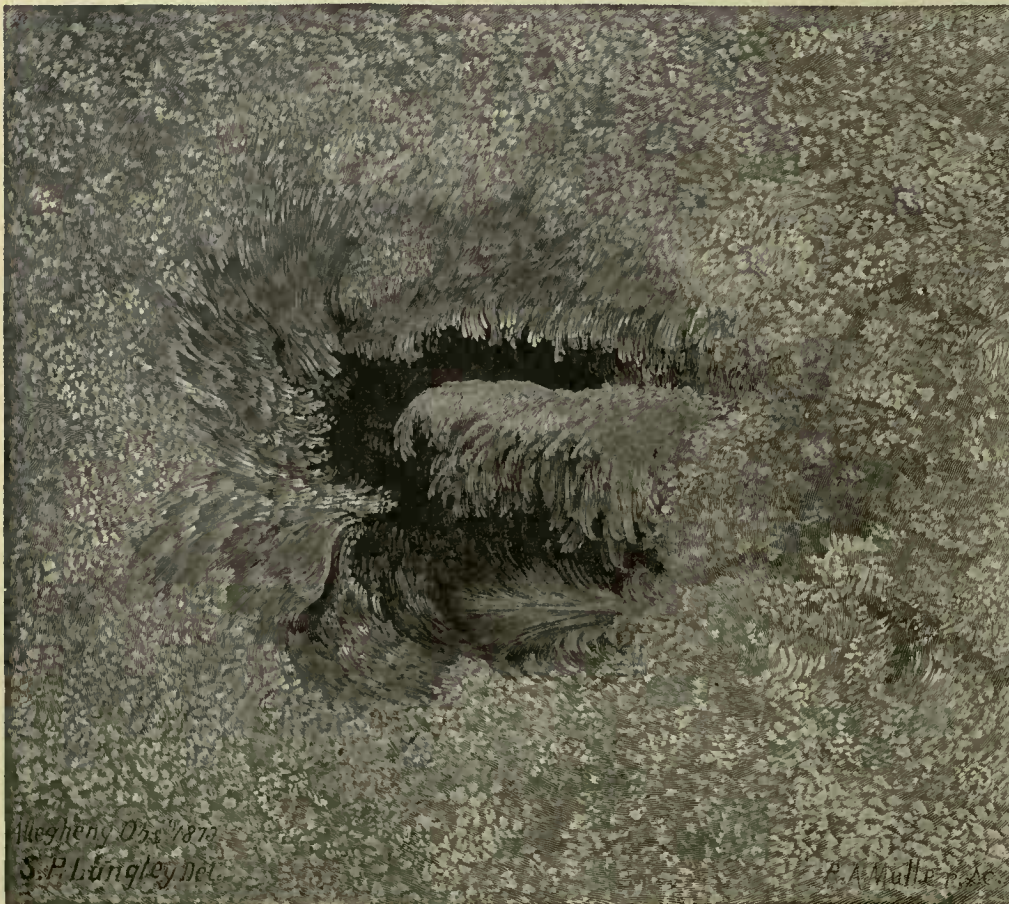
*Spot of July 16, 1866.*

FIG. 52.

*A typical Sun-spot.*

months. Seventeen months have been about the longest duration of any sun-spot known. Sun-spots are sometimes of immense size. The largest spot was observed in 1858. It had a diameter of a hundred and forty-three thousand miles. One of thirty or forty thousand miles can easily be seen with no further aid than a bit of smoked glass. They generally come in small groups. They move across the face of the sun which we see, in about twelve or thirteen days, disappearing on one edge; but when another period of the same length has elapsed, sun-spots which can unquestionably be identified as the same, are found coming back on the opposite edge of the sun. This is evidently the result of the sun's rotation on its axis. It is a curious fact that the motion of the sun-spots in different latitudes indicates that the part of the sun near the equator rotates more rapidly than the portion farther removed from that circle. At the equator the rotation seems to be performed in about twenty-five days.

The spots are not found equally distributed on all parts of the sun. They occur chiefly in two zones on each side of the equator, as shown in Fig. 54. These zones are between the latitudes 10° and 30° . Sun-spots have been seen but once beyond latitude 45° .

We see the spots move in the direction of a line from the east to the west point of our horizon, but it is evident that the side of the sun's face turned toward us corresponds to the part of the earth's surface which is below the horizon of the person observing him. It is evident that the part of the sun's surface which we see, rotates on his axis in the same direction with the part of the earth's surface which is below our horizon. It is clear from this that the sun's axial rotation is in the same direction as the earth's motion. To avoid ambiguity in the use of words, we must call the direction of the sun's rotation eastward.

It is evident that the sun-spots have a motion of their own, as well as that caused by the sun's rotation.

The curves made by the spots, as seen in Fig. 55, show that the

sun's axis is inclined to the plane of the ecliptic. That the sun-spots are depressions in the photosphere is shown by the changes wrought by perspective in one which

size and number they reach a maximum and minimum. It also shows that the increase and decrease coincide with the increase and decrease of magnetic disturbances on earth, which have a period of eleven years.

FIG. 53.



Sun-spots as seen by Prof. Langley.

travels across the sun's face. This is seen in Fig. 56. While the spot is on the western side of the sun, nothing is visible but the western side of the penumbra. As it

advances east, the umbra begins to be seen; then, as it passes directly in front of us, we see the whole umbra and the penumbra all round it; then the western side of the penumbra goes out of sight; then the umbra, and finally we see only the eastern side of the penumbra.

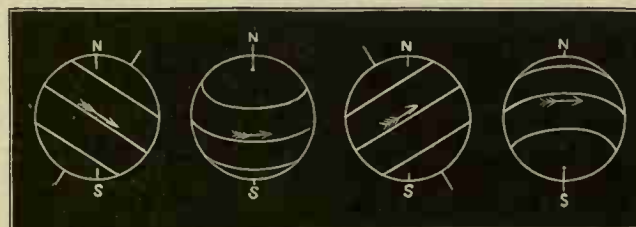


FIG. 54.

Observation shows that during periods of about eleven or twelve years there is an alternate increase and decrease in the activity which creates sun-spots. In

them at any other time than on these rare occasions, on account of the diffused reflected light in the earth's atmosphere. But the spectroscope, which has revealed so many secrets, came to the aid of the astronomers.

FIG. 55.



Apparent Paths of the Spots across the Sun's Disk, as seen from the Earth at different times of the year. The arrows show the direction in which the Sun rotates.

Dispersion is, as the name shows, a separation or spreading out of the rays of light. A spectroscope of high dispersive power* makes the band of the spectrum

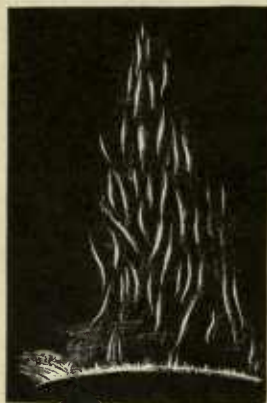
* The dispersive power of a spectroscope is increased by passing the light through a great number of prisms.

Scale, 75,000 miles to the inch.

ERUPTIVE PROMINENCES.



Prominence as it appeared at half-past twelve o'clock, September 7, 1871.



As it appeared half an hour later, when the up-rushing hydrogen attained a height of more than 200,000 miles.



Spikes.



Flames.



Cyclone.



Vertical Filaments.



Spot near the Sun's limb, with accompanying jets of hydrogen, as seen October 5, 1871.



Jets.



As seen at 2.15 P. M.



As seen at 3.30 P. M.



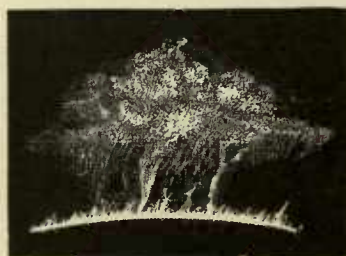
As seen at 2.45 P. M.

Three figures, of the same prominence, seen July 25, 1872.
100,000 miles to the inch.

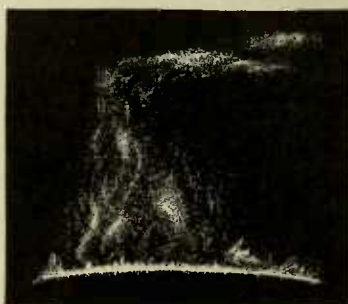
Sheaf and Volutes.

Scale, 75,000 miles to the inch.

QUIESCENT PROMINENCES.



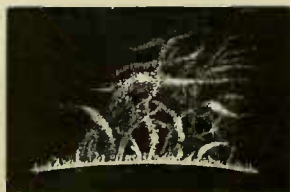
Stemmed.



Diffuse.



Horns.



Filamentary.

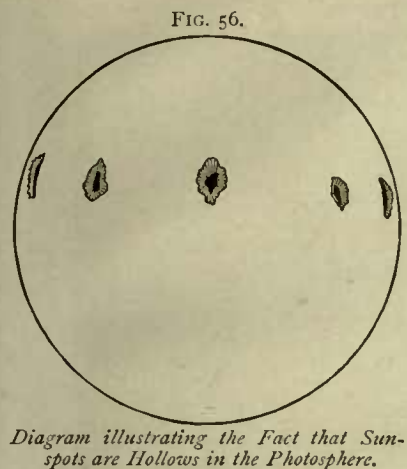


Plumes.



Clouds.

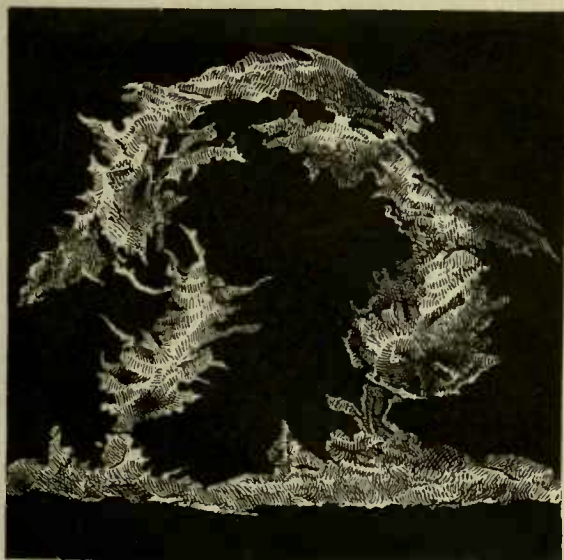
longer, and the spaces between the transverse lines broader. The light between the lines is greatly weakened by it, but the brilliancy of the lines is not at all diminished. The spectrum of the solar prominences is a bright-lined spectrum, and that of the direct and reflected solar light is a reversed spectrum. Therefore, by using a spectroscope of great dispersive power, astronomers weaken the light which obscures the light of the prominences, so that they are now seen and studied at any time with as much ease as during a solar eclipse.



The solar prominences are of two kinds, the Quiescent and the Eruptive Prominences.

183. The Quiescent Prominences change very gradually and look like masses of red clouds, which, when fully seen, are found joined to the chromosphere by slender trunks, as seen in Fig. 57. The spectroscope

FIG. 57.



shows that they owe their red color to hydrogen. These prominences are seen all round the sun.

184. The Eruptive Prominences are flames which burst forth near sun-spots, and are therefore not found near the poles. They change very rapidly, showing a great variety of transformations. The spectroscope

proves that they are largely due to the vapors of sodium, magnesium, barium, iron, and titanium. For this reason they are called metallic prominences (see Figs. 58, 59). The chromosphere always shows the lines of hydrogen, and sometimes the lines of the elements belonging to the metallic prominences. It also contains some lines which have not been identified as belonging to any element that we know. Astronomers have agreed for the present to call this element helium. The spectrum of the red prominences consists of hydrogen and helium. The student must not suppose that this hydrogen is burning in the sense of chemically combining with any other substance, as, for example, oxygen. Such combinations would not occur in so high a temperature.

FIG. 58.

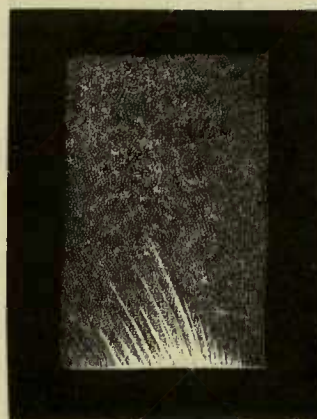
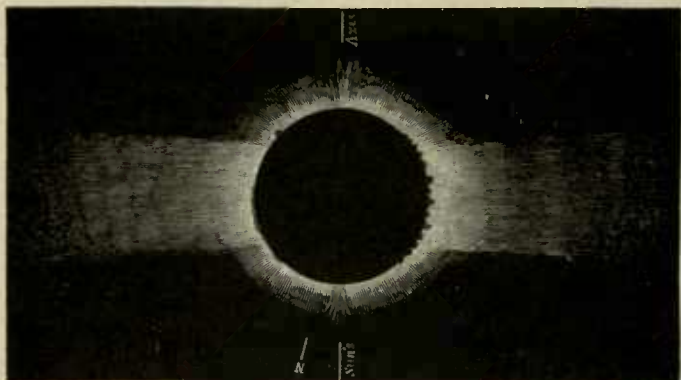


FIG. 59.



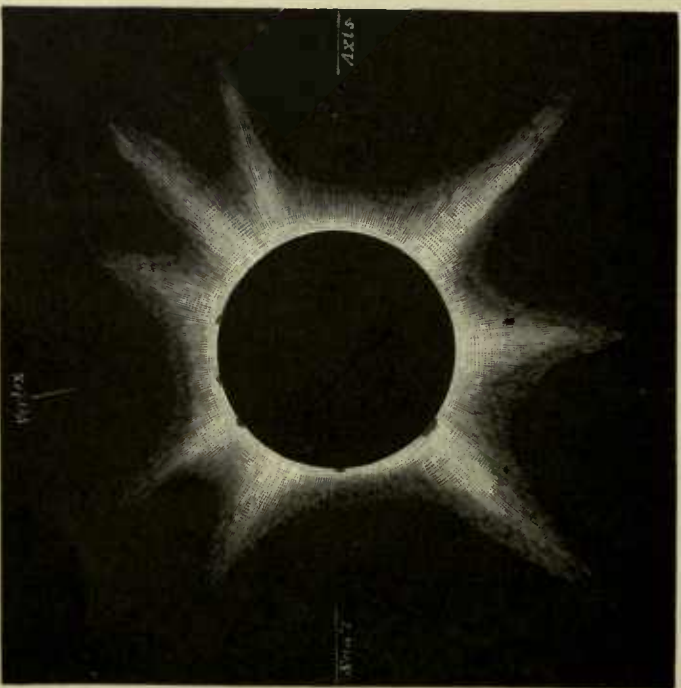
185. The Corona. (See Figs. 60, 61, 62, 63).—The corona can be seen only when there is a total eclipse of the sun, and, as this lasts but for a few minutes, the opportunities for observing it have been limited. At the time of a total eclipse, the moon looks like a dark sphere in the middle of a halo formed of "radiant filaments, beams and sheets of pearly light. The portion nearest the sun is of dazzling brightness, but still less brilliant than the red prominences which blaze through it like carbuncles. Generally, this inner corona has a pretty uniform width, forming a ring three or four minutes of an arc in width, separated by a somewhat definite outline from the outer corona, which reaches to a much greater distance and is more irregular in form. Usually there are several rifts, as they have been called, like narrow beams of darkness extending from the edge of the sun to the outer night, and much resembling the cloud-shadows which radiate from the sun before a thunder-shower; but the edges of these rifts are frequently curved, showing them to be something else than real shadows. Sometimes there are long bright streamers, as long as the rifts, or longer. On the whole, the corona is usually less extensive and less



Corona of 1867. (Grosch.)



Corona of 1878. (From Combination of Various Drawings.)



Corona of 1871. (Foenander.)

brilliant over the solar poles, and there is a tendency to accumulations above the middle latitudes or spot-zones."

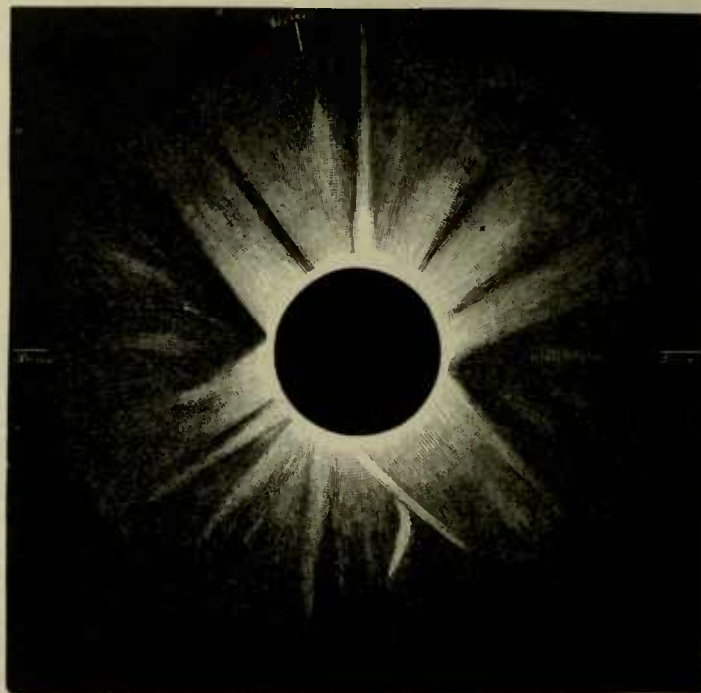
FIG. 60.



Corona as observed by Liais in 1857.

Prof. Young says : " The portion of the corona nearest the sun has a greenish pearly tinge, which contrasts

FIG. 61.



Corona of 1871. (Captain Tupman.)

finely with the scarlet blaze of the prominences. . . . For the most part the streamers have a length not ex-

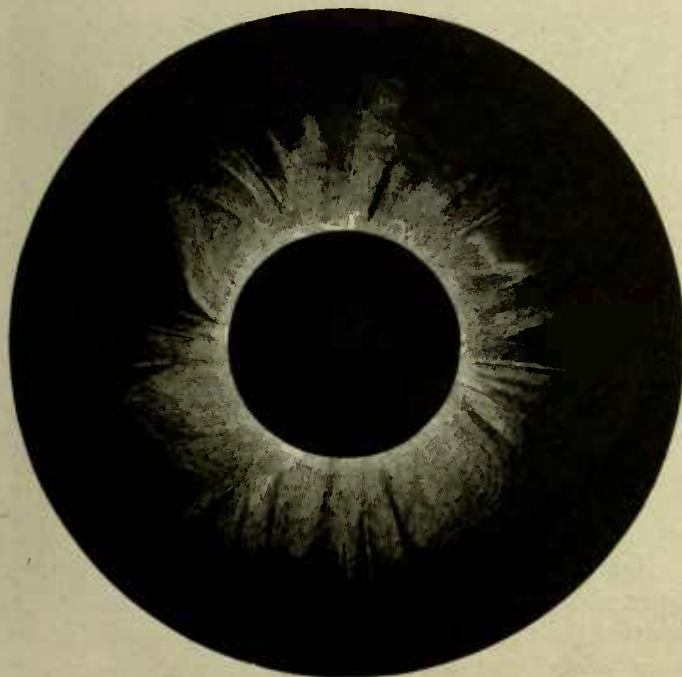
FIG. 62.



Corona of 1860. (Tempel.)

ceeding the sun's radius, but some of them go far beyond this limit. In the clear air of Colorado, during the

FIG. 63.



Corona of 1871. (From Photographs of Mr. Davis.)

eclipse of 1878, two of them could be traced for five or six degrees, a distance of more than nine million miles from the sun."

The spectrum of the corona is remarkable for containing one bright line sometimes called "1474," more generally "the coronal line," which comes from some element with which we are entirely unacquainted; and which when in vapor (if it ever is anything else) is far lighter than hydrogen, the lightest substance we know. There is a dark line corresponding to it in a spectrum of light from the face of the sun. For the present, astronomers have agreed to call this element *coronium*. The corona also shows faint traces of hydrogen.

The corona must be composed chiefly of luminous gas, but it probably contains some minutely divided particles which reflect sunlight. This matter must be of inconceivable tenuity, for comets have passed through the corona without changing their motions. It is probably less dense than the matter in any vacuum we can produce. Prof. Young says, "The corona can not be a true solar atmosphere in any strict sense of that word."

NOTE.—The Sun's Heat.—Of late years there has been much discussion among astronomers and physicists as to the way in which the sun's heat is maintained. As plants and animals have not changed since the Christian era, the sun's heat can not have diminished much. This heat can not be due to combustion, for, as Prof. Young says, the sun would burn out in six thousand years if made of solid coal. Also, if the sun were only a hot body cooling, its heat would have lessened greatly.

There have been two theories. That of Mayer supposes that the sun's heat is maintained by meteors falling upon it, the swift motion being converted to heat by sudden resistance. But it is not believed that the number of meteors falling on the sun can be sufficient to keep up its heat in this manner.

The theory of Helmholtz is now generally accepted. A short account of it may interest students of this book, but they could not, of course, understand the mathematical reasoning which supports it. Helmholtz thinks that the sun, losing heat by radiation and contracting by its own gravity, is similar to a body falling against resistance. The contraction produces heat, and thus lessens the loss. It was shown by Lane, in 1870, that a present result of this loss of heat may be increase of temperature in the contracted mass; that is, that the heat remaining in the smaller and denser mass may maintain a higher temperature than was maintained by a larger quantity of heat when distributed through the greater volume of the more expanded mass.

It follows, from the theory of Helmholtz, that the sun must in time lose all its heat. Only an approximate estimate can now be given of the period in which the sun will continue to radiate heat sufficient for the support of life such as we know it. Prof. Newcomb reckons it to be about ten million years.

CHAPTER IX.

THE PLANETS—GENERAL ACCOUNT.

186. The planets are arranged according to size in two classes, called respectively the Major and the Minor Planets.

187. The Major Planets are Mercury, Venus, the Earth, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, and Neptune. Mercury, Venus, Mars, Jupiter, and Saturn were all known to the ancients. Uranus was discovered by Sir William Herschel in 1781. It can be seen by the naked eye as a star of the sixth magnitude. It can, however, hardly be identified by any but an experienced observer who knows where to look for it, as its apparent size is so small and it moves so slowly. Neptune can be seen without difficulty with a good opera-glass.

188. The Minor Planets.—Besides the planets just named, there are a large number of small planetary bodies revolving round the sun between the orbits of Mars and Jupiter. They are called the Minor Planets, or Asteroids. (See "Asteroids," p. 79.)

In the following list, the planets are named in the order of their distances from the sun, beginning with the one nearest the center: Mercury, Venus, the Earth, Mars, the Asteroids, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune. The distances from the sun increase with some regularity, and it was long noticed that there seemed to be a gap between Mars and Jupiter, so it was thought that some unknown planet might fill it. Early in the present century four very small planets were discovered, and called Juno, Ceres, Pallas, and Vesta. In 1843 another, called Astræa, became known; and since then more than three hundred have been found. New ones are often discovered. Many of them are very minute bodies.

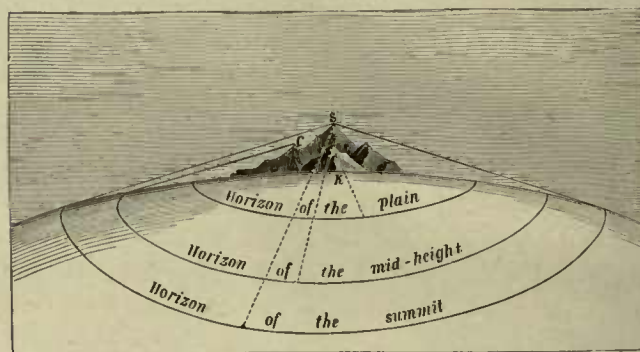
Except Mercury and Venus, all the known planets are superior planets; that is, they revolve round the sun in orbits exterior to the earth's orbit. Their motions correspond to the motions of the superior planets described in Chapter VI. The angle through which their movement appears to retrograde, decreases as their distances from the sun increase.

In this book, the forms, volumes, densities, etc., of the planets are described together under these respective heads, because the student gains much more definite ideas by comparison.

189. Forms of the Planets.—The earth is one of the planets, and it will be best to speak of her figure first. The earth is round, or a sphere. We know this from a variety of facts: 1. The shadow of the earth, as seen on the moon when she is eclipsed, is always round. 2. The horizon is always a circle. If we are on a plain, our

horizon is limited; if we ascend to a slight elevation, our view is more extended; and, if we go up a high mountain, we have still a wider horizon; but through all the changes our horizon is still a circle (see Fig. 64). This makes it quite certain that the earth is a sphere. 3.

FIG. 64.

*Horizons of the Same Place, at Different Heights.*

When vessels at sea come in view of an observer, we see first the top of the mast, then the upper sails, next the lower sails, and finally the hull. This is represented in Fig. 65, and shows conclusively that the surface of the ocean is spherical.

FIG. 65.

*Proof of the Curvature of the Earth's Surface.*

But the earth is not a perfect sphere. Her figure is flattened like an orange at the poles. Mathematicians describe the earth's figure as an "oblate spheroid." In order to understand some arguments made from these facts, the student is reminded of twirling a key, tied to

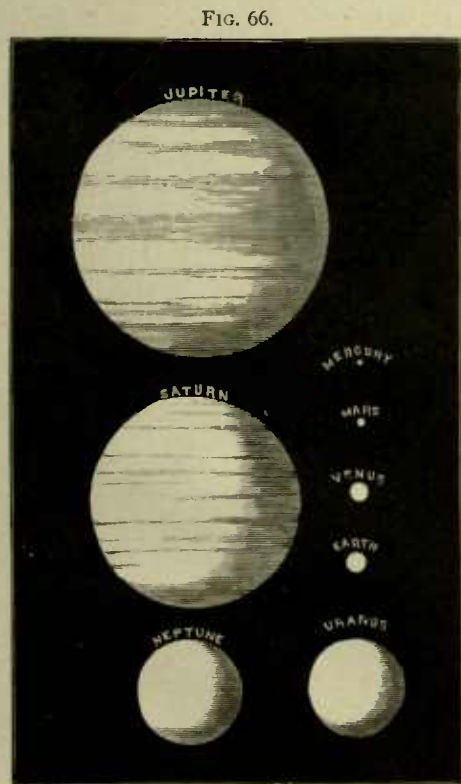
a string, in a circle round the hand. That the key has a tendency to move off in a straight line is shown at once when we let go the string. It is retained in place by the hand-grasp and the cohesive force of the string. If the string is not very strong, the motion may be rapid enough to break it. Now, there is a great deal of evidence to show that the earth was once in a semi-fluid or plastic condition from heat; that is, the earth was once revolving on its axis with the force of cohesion much weaker than it now is. Every particle moved, as now, in a circle like the key. The particles about the surface of the equator move most rapidly, since they move through larger circles in the same time. This increases their tendency to fly off, and to resist all forces of attraction; and, as cohesion was weak then, they pulled out the sphere about the equator, and thus the earth became an oblate spheroid.

The excess of matter about the earth's equator, and the attraction of the sun and moon for the parts nearest them, are said by astronomers to cause the precession of the equinoxes.

The planets in different degrees show this same peculiarity of figure; and, as will be seen, we have evidence that some of them are still plastic from heat. The polar

diameter of Jupiter is five thousand miles shorter than his equatorial diameter.

190. Volumes of the Planets.—The word volume refers to mere size, without regard to weight. Jupiter is the largest planet. His diameter is 86,500 miles, and his volume is thirteen hundred times that of the earth. Saturn comes next, with a diameter of 75,000 miles, and his volume is seven hundred times greater than that of the earth. The



Comparative Sizes of the Planets.

earth's mean diameter is 7,918 miles. The diameter of Neptune measures 35,000 miles, that of Uranus 32,000.

Venus is a very little smaller than the earth in volume, and her diameter is only about 300 miles less than that of the earth. The diameter of Mars is about 4,200 miles, and his volume is about one seventh that of the earth. Mercury has a diameter of about 3,000 miles, and a volume about an eighteenth that of the earth. The diameter of the moon is a little more than 2,000 miles, and her volume is about one fiftieth that of the earth. These comparative volumes are illustrated in Figs. 66, 67, 68, 69.

FIG. 67.



Earth and Moon.

191. Densities.—The density of a body is its weight in proportion to its size, or in comparison with an equal volume of some other body. Thus a pound of iron is denser than a pound of wood. The earth is five times and two thirds as heavy as would be a globe

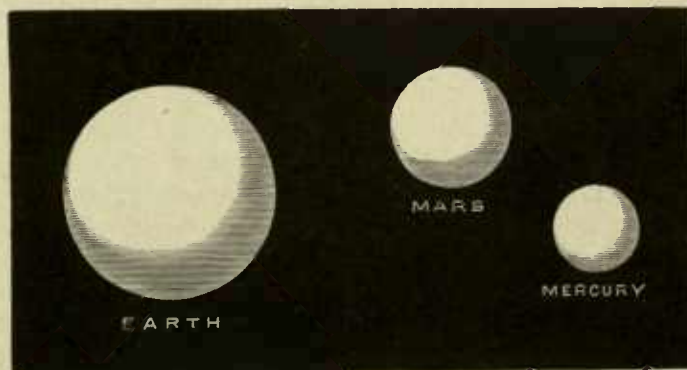
of water of the same size. The density of Mercury is more than twice that of the earth; that of Venus is a little less than that of the earth. Mars has only three fourths the earth's density. Jupiter is a little heavier, and Saturn a little

FIG. 68.



lighter, than would be a globe of water of the same size. Saturn is the least dense planet. Uranus is a little less dense than Jupiter, and Neptune than Uranus.

FIG. 69.

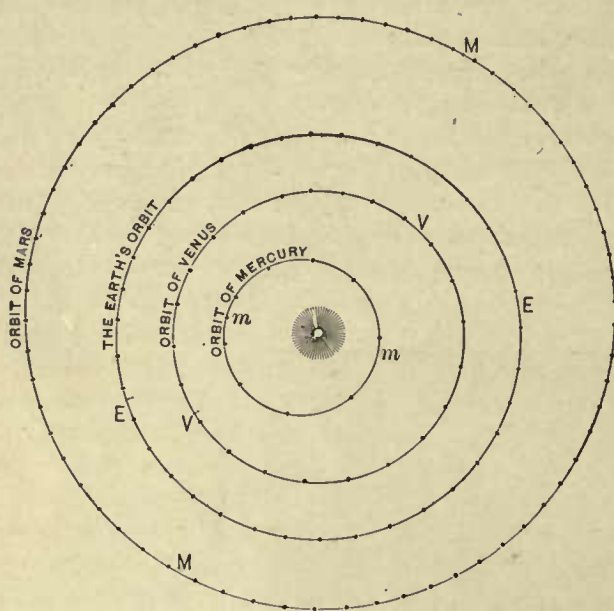


192. Eccentricity of Orbits.—The orbits are all ellipses. We know that the earth's orbit is an ellipse be-

cause the sun varies in apparent size; and we attribute this to a variation in his distance. The moon also varies in apparent diameter. So do the superior planets vary in diameter at different oppositions. The angle made by Venus and the sun at her greatest elongations varies in consequence of the varying distance of Venus from the sun, and the same is true of Mercury. All these facts show that the orbits are not perfect circles. Accurate measurement is, of course, required to ascertain the figures of the different ellipses.

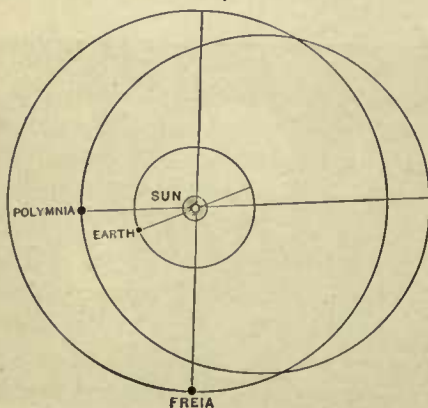
The eccentricity of an ellipse is the degree in which

FIG. 70.



it differs from a circle. The orbits of the earth and moon can hardly be distinguished from circles. That

FIG. 71.



of Venus is the least eccentric of all. This is shown by the fact that the angle of her greatest elongation differs very little from 47° . The almanac always reports it. But the other inferior planet, Mercury, sometimes reaches 28° from the sun, sometimes only 17° . This makes it at times very difficult to see Mercury. Thus the two inferior planets, Venus and Mercury, have the

least and the most eccentric orbits of any of the major planets. Mars comes next to Mercury. Every fifteen years he is much brighter at opposition than at the intervening oppositions. The orbit of Jupiter has about half the eccentricity of that of Mars.

The asteroids are remarkable for the very great eccentricity of some of their orbits.

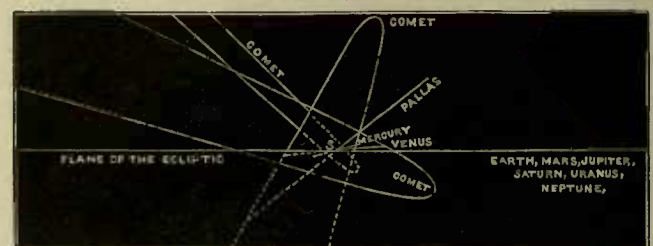
The orbits of some of the planets are illustrated in Figs. 70 and 71.

The orbit of Polymnia is the most eccentric orbit to be found among the asteroids.

193. Inclination of the Planes of the Orbits to the Ecliptic.—The ecliptic is the plane of the earth's orbit, as the student remembers. Also Mercury, Venus, Mars, and Saturn are to be looked for very near the ecliptic. This is because the planes of their orbits differ so little from the ecliptic. This subject becomes interesting as soon as we begin to watch the planets in nature. They are so near the great circle that we wish to know the exact angle made by the planes, since that marks their greatest distance from it. It must be remembered, however, that from the very fact that we are not in the same plane, we see them a little displaced from the positions in which an observer at the sun would see them. Uranus crosses the ecliptic at an angle of a little less than 1° ; Jupiter, a little more than 1° ; Mars and Neptune, less than 2° ; Venus, a little more than 3° . Mercury wanders farther from the ecliptic than any major planet. He is sometimes 7° from it, and as the zodiac extends only 8° , he barely keeps within it. Mercury deals in extremes. He is the densest planet, the nearest to the sun, has the most eccentric orbit, and moves farther from the plane of the ecliptic than any other planet except the asteroids. Many of the minor planets are sometimes more than 10° from the ecliptic; and one, Pallas, gets as far as 34° from it.

Fig. 72 shows the angles made by the various planes

FIG. 72.



The Plane of the Ecliptic and the Planetary Orbits.

with the plane of the earth's orbit. A number of these differ from the ecliptic so little that they are not separately represented.

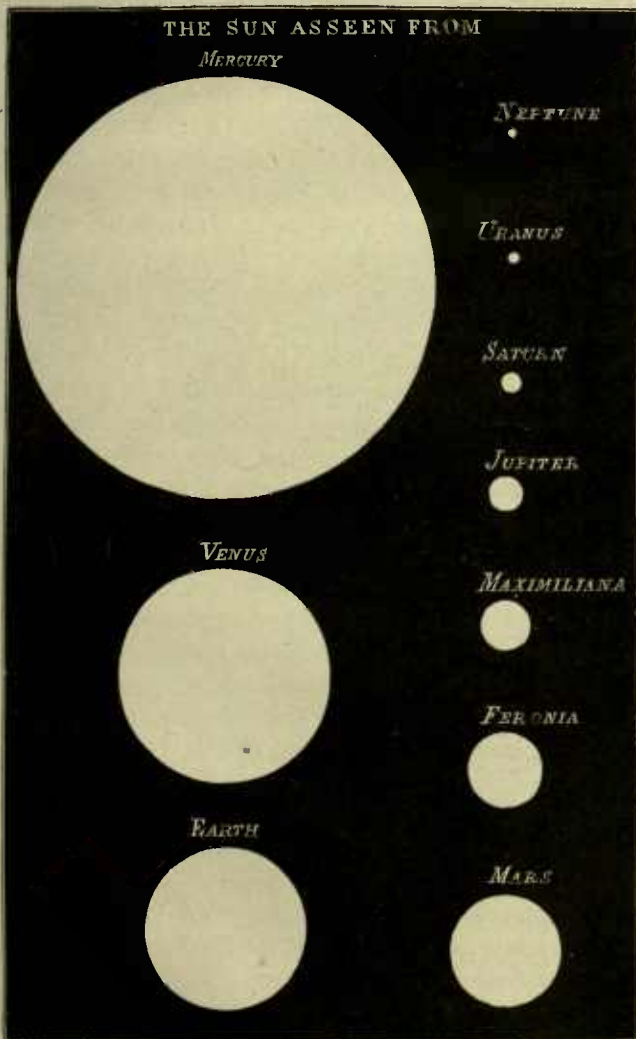
Distances from the Sun.

	Greatest distance—miles.	Least distance—miles.	Mean distance—miles.
Mercury,	43,000,000	28,000,000	36,000,000
Venus,	.....	.....	67,000,000
The Earth,	.....	.....	92,900,000
Mars,	153,000,000	127,000,000	141,000,000
Jupiter,	503,000,000	457,000,000	483,000,000
Saturn,	.....	.....	886,000,000
Uranus,	.....	.....	1,781,000,000
Neptune,	.....	.....	2,791,000,000

The moon is 239,000 miles from the earth.

Fig. 73, which shows the comparative size of the sun as he would appear to an observer on the different plan-

FIG. 73.



The Relative Size of the Sun, as seen from the Planets.

ets, enables the student to get a realizing idea of the distances from that luminary.

194. Sidereal and Synodical Revolutions.—When we

are interested in observing the planets, we very soon become familiar with the meaning of a synodical revolution, since we learn from it when to look for any planet in the evening sky. The planets are evening stars through half a synodical revolution; morning stars through the other half. The synodical period of Mercury is 116 days; that of Venus, 584 days; that of Mars, 779 days, or 26 months; that of Jupiter, 13 months. The synodical periods of Saturn, Uranus, and Neptune differ so little from a year that they seem to come and go with the fixed stars.

The sidereal periods have an interest of another kind. The sidereal period of a planet is its year, containing an entire revolution of its seasons. These periods increase in length with the distances of the planets from the sun. They are as follows (nearly):

Mercury,	88 of our days.	Jupiter,	12 years.
Venus,	225 " "	Saturn,	29½ "
The Earth,	365¼ " "	Uranus,	84 "
Mars,	687 " "	Neptune,	165 "

195. Rotation of the Planets.—The planets all rotate on axes from west to east. We know this by the motion of spots or inequalities upon the surface. By the curves in which the spots move we learn the inclination of a planet's axis to the plane of the ecliptic, and from that we find its inclination to the plane of its own orbit. (See Fig. 55, p. 57. Also "Rotations," p. 80.)

Account of each Planet.

196. Mercury.—We know little of Mercury, owing to his great nearness to the sun. He appears to have no moons. He receives on an average seven times as much light and heat as the earth. But he must, at opposite points of his orbit, vary much in regard to both. The presence of water vapor in his spectrum indicates that he has an atmosphere, but it must be less dense than that of Venus, since he does not exhibit the ring described in the next paragraph.

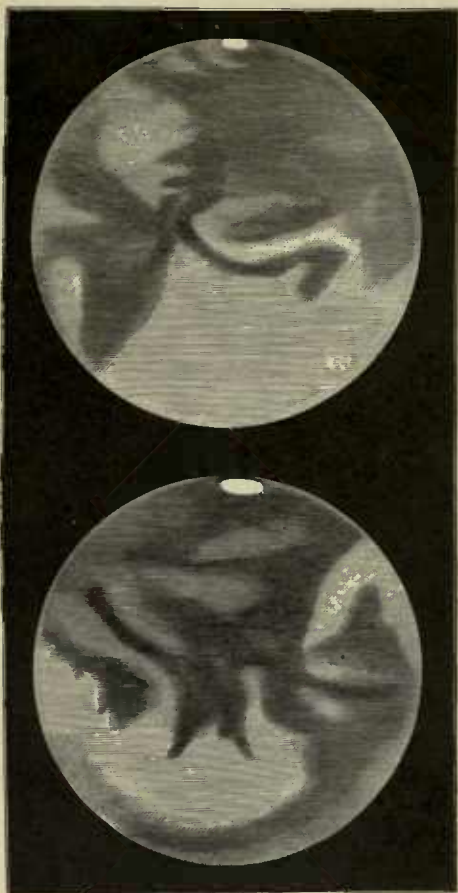
197. Venus.—As Venus enters on the sun at her transit, a ring of light round her shows the presence of a refracting atmosphere. The vapor of water is found in her atmosphere. She resembles the earth in size and density, but receives twice as much light and heat from the sun. We know little of her.

198. Mars.—(Fig. 74.) In a very good telescope Mars appears to have his surface marked by what appear to be islands and continents of a dull-red color, and darker intervening spaces of greenish hue give the impression of water. By means of the spectroscope we find that there is certainly water in the atmosphere of Mars. There appears to be a great deal more land than water on Mars. The oceans are long, with narrow seas like canals

running up into the land, so that water communication must be very general on Mars.

At the poles there are white circles (probably ice-

FIG. 74.

*Mars in 1862.*

caps), which diminish in size when the sun is alternately turned toward them in the varying seasons of Mars. We have evidence that the axis of Mars is inclined to the plane of his orbit about as much as that of the earth is; and therefore the seasons must differ much as ours do, except that they are longer; in consequence of the greater length of the year of Mars, which is 687 of our days. The day of Mars is not far from twenty-four hours in length. The red color of Mars has been attributed to

the cause which produces our sunset-red, viz., the absorption of certain rays by the atmosphere of Mars. But there are many speculations about it.

The general appearance of Mars, the evidence of land and water, his seasons, his days, make him appear to be a globe similar to ours, and not unsuited to the support of life. But we have no evidence at all of its existence. Mercury, and especially Venus, come near us, but they are then so partially illuminated (being crescents) that we have no good opportunity to see their surface. Mars at opposition is near us, and in good position to be seen, since we see his side turned to the sun. He comes into this position only once in twenty-six months, but astronomers are then very assiduous in observing him. About every fifteen years he is still nearer. Much was learned in 1877, when he was at perihelion and the earth at aphelion, at the time of his opposition. Maps have been made of his surface. (See "Mars," p. 79.)

Mars has two small moons, discovered in 1877 by

Prof. Hall, and called Phobos and Deimos. The diameter of the inner moon, Phobos, is probably seven miles. It is not quite six thousand miles from Mars. Our moon is about forty times as far from the earth. Phobos occupies nearly eight hours in his sidereal revolution, but, since Mars rotates on his axis more slowly in the same direction, Phobos moves round Mars in nine hours, and must rise in the east and set in the west twice in a Martian day of twenty-four hours. Deimos makes a sidereal revolution in thirty hours. Its diameter is probably five miles.

199. Jupiter.—(See Fig. 75.) The axis of Jupiter is nearly perpendicular to the plane of his orbit, and therefore there can not be much variation of seasons.

From the small density of Jupiter, and the constantly varying character of his surface, it is believed that a large part of the planet that we see consists of an atmosphere filled with great clouds and heavy vapors. The changes are so great and sudden that it is supposed that heat must be the cause of such activity. We have abundant evidence that our own globe was once in a plastic condition from heat; and it is supposed that Jupiter may be in that condition, not having cooled off sufficiently to be covered with a solid crust. Belts formed of rolling clouds seem to stretch across the disk of Jupiter from east to west. At the equator, when not too strongly magnified, they have the appearance of two parallel belts. In a large telescope Jupiter shows many colors—brown, red, olive-green, and sometimes purple.

Jupiter, like the sun, is darker at the edges than near the center, so that his moons, when first seen passing over him, appear bright by contrast, but, as they approach the center, the contrast diminishes. It has been supposed that Jupiter may have a little light of his own, but this is unproved, and the moons do not reflect any when Jupiter is between them and the sun. Sometimes there are spots on Jupiter which pass away very slowly. In 1878 there appeared a great oval red spot not far from the equatorial belts, and it was seen at intervals for several years. There are indications that, in the case of Jupiter as in that of the sun, the equatorial parts rotate with a different velocity from that of the parts near the poles. This spot, much faded, was seen in 1889.

There is every reason to think that Jupiter is in no condition to maintain life; but he is of great interest to us, because he seems to be in the condition in which our earth was while undergoing the changes which fitted it to be the abode of men and animals.

Jupiter has four large moons. The largest has a diameter of about 3,600 miles, being nearly as large as the planet Mars. The smallest is about the size of the earth's moon. The shortest revolution around Jupiter takes a

little less than two days, and the longest nearly seventeen days. When Jupiter passes between his satellites and the sun, they are eclipsed and, of course, darkened. But

FIG. 75.



Jupiter can pass between us and his satellites without passing between them and the sun. They are then said to be occulted, because they are hidden from us; but they are not darkened.

When a moon passes between Jupiter and the sun it casts a shadow on him. The bright side of the moon is turned toward us, and is seen to pass over the planet's face. This is called a transit of the moon. As we are not often in a straight line with the planet and a moon, we usually see both the bright spot and the shadow. (See Fig. 75.)

The axis of Jupiter is very little inclined to the plane of his orbit, and the orbits of his moons are very nearly in the plane of his equator, so that they are all, except one, eclipsed at every revolution. If there were an observer on Jupiter, he would see in a year over four thousand eclipses of the sun, and about the same number of eclipses of the moons.

The moons of Jupiter can be seen through a very small telescope, or through a good opera-glass.

200. Saturn.—The axis of Saturn is much inclined to the plane of his orbit.

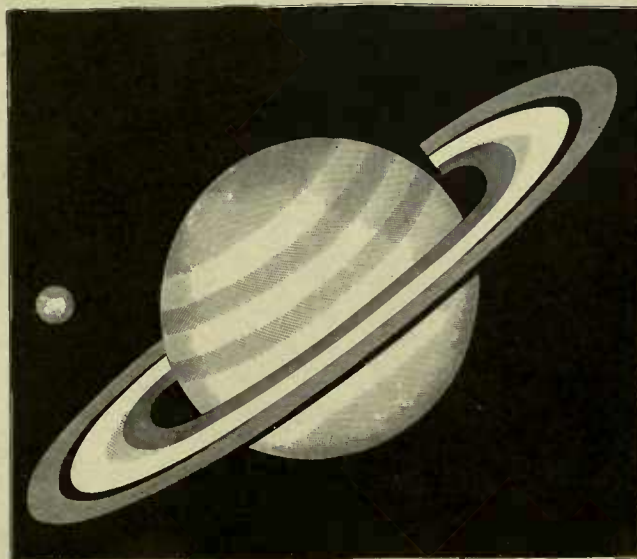
The telescopic appearance of Saturn has long been of great interest on account of his rings. Figs. 76, 77, give pictures of Saturn and his rings. The rings are thin and flat, and lie in the plane of Saturn's equator. They consist of three parts: 1. A dusky ring nearest the planet, and therefore in a position where it can not reflect much sunlight upon us. It is therefore difficult to see it. The outline of the planet has been seen through this interior dark ring. 2. Next to this dusky ring there is a bright ring. 3. Outside of this bright ring, there is another, not quite so bright, but still brighter than the dusky ring; and between the two outer rings there is an open space which is black in the picture. The inner edge of the dusky ring is about ten thousand miles from the planet's surface. The rings are in motion round the globe; and, with the axis, are inclined about 27° to the plane of the planet's orbit. In moving, both axis and rings keep this inclination.

The rings of Saturn are now generally believed to consist of a multitude of small satellites so close together that, like a swarm of bees, they seem at a distance to be continuous. In the dusky ring, the particles are supposed to be farthest apart. The interior dark ring is sometimes called "the crape ring." The diameter of the outermost ring

is one hundred and sixty-eight thousand miles.

From the movements of Saturn and the earth, his

FIG. 76.



Saturn and the Earth—Comparative Size.

rings are turned in a great variety of positions as regards the observer. These are called the phases of the rings,

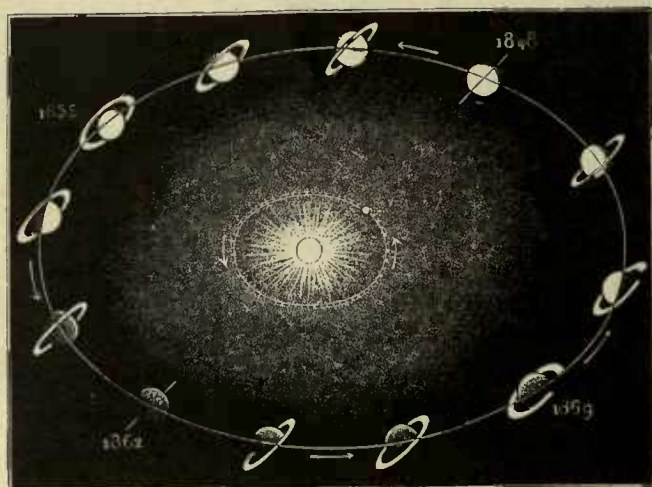
FIG. 77.



Saturn with the North Surface of its Rings presented to the Earth.

and they are shown in Fig. 78. The rings and their phases may be seen in a telescope of small power, but a good view of the three rings can be had only in a telescope of high power. As Saturn is $29\frac{1}{2}$ years in making a complete revolution round the sun, he takes the whole period to show all the phases. At two opposite points in Saturn's orbit, the rings are turned edgewise toward us, and they disappear,

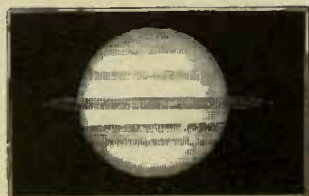
FIG. 78.



Different Appearances of Saturn's Rings.

appear, except in the most powerful telescopes; and in them look like a thin line of light. The satellites of Saturn are nearly in the plane of the ring system, and when it looks thus they are seen moving on its edge "like golden beads on a silver thread." The disappearance of the system shows its very great thinness. This phase is shown in Fig. 79.

FIG. 79.



Appearance of Saturn when the Plane of its Rings passes through the Earth.

Saturn's sphere seems to be very much in the condition of Jupiter. It is covered with clouds in which some faint traces of belts are distinguished, and is probably still hot and the seat of great activity. But Saturn

is so far away that it is difficult to know much about him.

Saturn has eight moons. The largest of these, Titan, is larger than the planet Mercury, and can be seen in very small telescopes. But they are not all visible except in telescopes of the largest size.

201. Uranus and Neptune.—Nothing is known in regard to their physical features. In a large telescope both are said to have a sea-green appearance. Uranus receives $\frac{1}{370}$ as much light and heat as the earth; while Neptune receives only $\frac{1}{510}$ as much. (See "Neptune," p. 80.)

Uranus has four moons, whose orbits are inclined nearly 80° to the plane of the planet's orbit. Neptune has one. The satellites of Uranus and Neptune have one remarkable peculiarity: they revolve around their planet from east to west; all other planets and satellites revolve from west to east.

202. The Moon.—That the moon has no appreciable atmosphere is clearly shown in several ways. At half-moon, the diameter which forms one boundary is the dividing line between day and night on the moon. If there were an atmosphere, there would be some indication of twilight near this line; but there is none. The shadows of the mountains are pitchy black, showing no trace of the diffused light which would result from an atmosphere. Besides, if the moon had any atmosphere, we should expect, at a solar eclipse, that her edge would be surrounded by a dusky ring or border, such as are seen around Venus and Mercury when making a transit across the sun's face. But there is nothing of the kind. Also, in the moon's course through her orbit, she often passes over or *occults* a star. If she had any atmosphere, we should probably see these stars become dimmed just before disappearing; but they seem suddenly blotted out. Astronomers have made careful observations to see whether there were any traces of refraction. The conclusion is, that the moon has no appreciable atmosphere.

FIG. 80.



Moon at the First Quarter. (From Photographs taken by Prof. H. Draper, New York.)

There never is any appearance of clouds passing over the moon, except clouds near the

FIG. 81.

*Moon Scenery.*

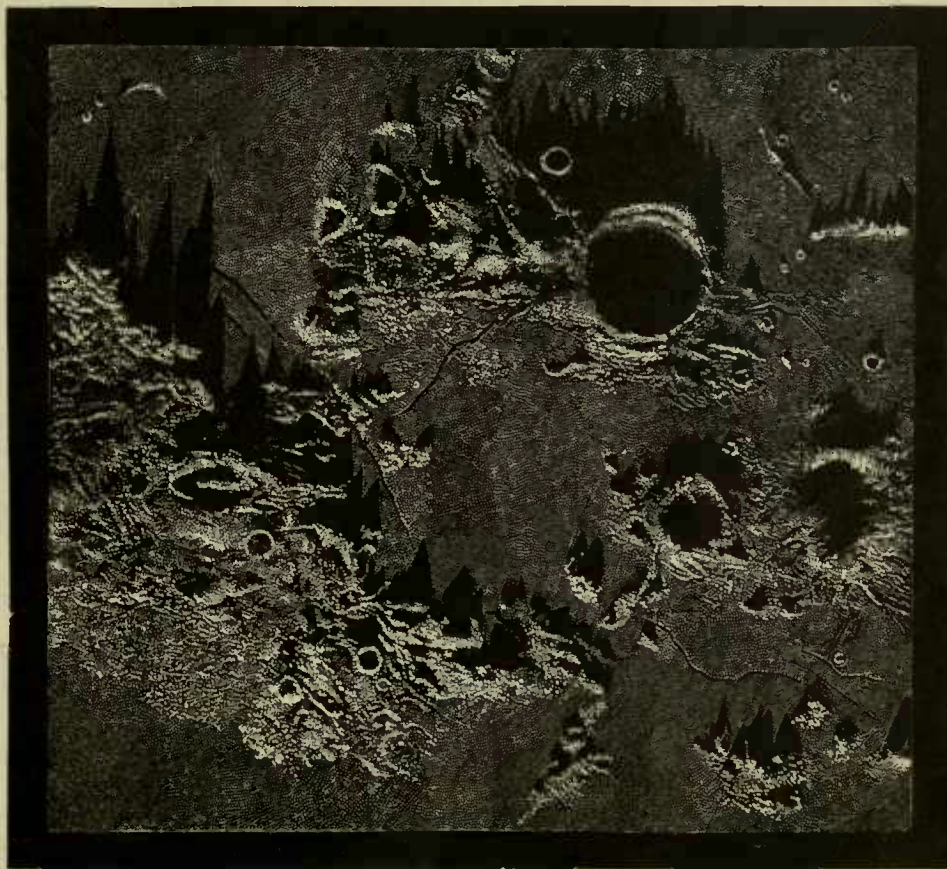
earth. There is, thus far, an absence of indication of water. There might be ice at a very low temperature.

The moon's surface, to an observer with the naked eye, seems spotted with dusky patches, in which imagination sometimes sees a resemblance to a human face popularly called "the man in the moon." Under a telescope of low power, the dusky patches appear smooth, but with higher power, elevations and depressions become visible. The moon's face seems to be thickly pitted with the craters of extinct volcanoes. Many of them have central cones which have every appearance of having arisen from eruptive action, which would have great power on the moon, since the force of gravity would be less than on earth, owing to the moon's smaller mass. Some of the craters are, however, different from those of any volcanoes that we know, appearing to be mere plains surrounded by irregular circular walls. In the formations on the moon there is a very general tendency to circular shape. The greater number of the craters are depressed below the surface, but some are hollowed out in elevations. In some places

they stand singly on the plain; in others they are crowded and heaped upon one another; sometimes there are small craters on a plain which is surrounded by the wall of a large crater. They are of all sizes, from the small one just visible to us, to the great one with a diameter of more than a hundred miles. The great crater Ptolemy incloses a space equal to the State of Massachusetts. These formations are generally regarded as due to volcanic origin, but it is not believed that there are now any active volcanoes on the moon. The moon has been compared to a burned-out cinder.

The inequalities of the moon's surface are best shown at or near her quadrature. The line which separates light from darkness is called the *terminator*. On this line the sun is all the time rising or setting, and therefore long shadows are thrown which bring out details and show the heights of mountains. (Something of this irregular appearance of the terminator can be seen at quadrature without a telescope.) Besides this, there are elevated portions which catch the light both before sunrise and after sunset. These effects can be seen very plainly with a telescope of even moderate power. Fig. 80, showing the shadows, and also the light on the

FIG. 82.

*Moon Scenery.*

elevated points, is a reduced copy of one of Prof. H. Draper's photographs of the moon.

There are also chains of mountains on the moon.

FIG. 83.



Moon Scenery.

Their heights have been ascertained by means of their shadows; and it is found that in proportion to the size of the moon, her mountains are higher than those on the earth. There are chains which have been named respectively the Alps, the Apennines, and the Caucasus. Fig. 81 shows the region of the lunar Alps, with the great crater Plato. The diameter of Plato's ring is about seventy miles, and the mountains surrounding it are five or six thousand feet high. To the left of Plato there is a remarkable valley, the valley of the Alps. It is as level as if it were a roadway made by engineers; but it is bounded by very tall mountains. It is six miles wide and seventy-five miles long. The sun is on the left of the picture, and the mountains throw long shadows on the right.

Fig. 82 is a representation of the lunar Apennines and the great crater Archimedes. These mountains rise to nearly eighteen thousand feet. On the plain there are black lines representing the chasms, cracks, or canals, which form a curious feature of the moon's surface. Some of them are a hundred miles long. They are supposed to be of volcanic origin, like so many other features of the moon's surface.

Fig. 83 shows an ideal lunar landscape, taken from the work of Nasmyth and Carpenter on the moon.

There is another very curious feature of the moon's surface seen when she is full, and when, of course, the perpendicular rays of the sun shine on her. There are seen, radiating from some of the craters, bright streaks, which run over the surface of the moon for hundreds of miles, crossing mountains and valleys without seeming to be stopped by any obstacles whatever. Fig. 84 shows the full moon and these bright streaks. They radiate especially from three great craters, Tycho, Copernicus, and Kepler. They do not appear to be elevations or depressions on the moon's surface. It has been well said, "They look as if, after the whole surface of the moon had received its final configuration, a vast brush charged with a whitish pigment had been drawn over the globe, leaving its trail upon everything it touched, but obscuring nothing." An effort has

been made to account for these appearances by supposing that the moon, in cooling, suddenly cracked: that these cracks afterward became filled with melted lava, which, when cool, presented a smooth surface capable of reflecting light. This, of course, is not much more than conjecture.

It is supposed that the moon represents a body like the earth, in a much more advanced stage of cooling than the planet on which we live. It has, astronomers think, reached the stage when it can no longer support any form of life that we know.

FIG 84.



Full Moon. (From Photographs taken by Prof. H. Draper, New York.)

CHAPTER X.

METEORIODS AND COMETS.

203. Shooting-Stars.—When we are out of doors after dark on a clear evening, we frequently see what appear to be stars moving swiftly across the sky and vanishing; sometimes leaving, for a few seconds, a long train of light, and sometimes breaking into pieces without any noise. These bodies are called *shooting-stars*.

204. Meteors.—Occasionally we see larger moving bodies giving a brilliant light, which in some instances is bright enough to illuminate the whole heavens. Some of these explode with a loud noise. These larger shooting-stars are commonly called *meteors*, though the name applies in strictness to both classes.

205. Aerolites.—Besides this, stony or metallic bodies are, at rare intervals, known to fall through the air, penetrating a short distance into the earth, and being hot if found soon after the fall. A very few of these stones are large bodies. One in the cabinet of Yale College weighs nearly a ton. Sometimes they fall in numbers. These falling bodies are called *aerolites*. They are composed of chemical elements well known on earth, but sometimes in combinations not seen here except under circumstances which furnish good evidence that they have fallen from the skies. (See "Meteors," p. 80.)

206. Composition.—It is now believed that these bodies can be distinguished by their composition when there is no other evidence of their fall. They always contain iron in the metallic state, which is very rarely found on earth. They are called meteoric irons and meteoric stones, according as they are composed largely of metallic iron, or as they contain a larger proportion of other elements. They also have in them compounds of iron not known on earth. Meteoric iron has a crystalline structure, and aerolites in general look as if they had been melted to some distance below their surfaces. They are covered with a black crust.

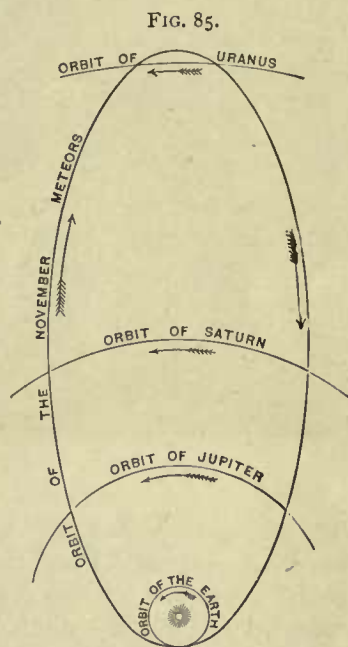
207. Origin.—It is now thought that a large number of small particles and masses of matter revolve round the sun, and, coming within the sphere of the earth's attraction, they are brought into forcible contact with our atmosphere. The collision produces heat and likewise light, and in some cases the effect is great enough to produce explosion. The atmosphere is very attenuated matter, but the velocity is so great that the result is like that of striking flint with far less velocity.

To these bodies, called meteoroids, are due shooting-stars, meteors, and aerolites, which thus all belong essentially to the same class. Meteoroids are supposed to be exceedingly numerous. It has even been estimated that eight million pass through our atmosphere in twenty-four

hours. The visible path of shooting-stars is usually between fifty and seventy-five miles from the earth.

208. Meteoric Showers.—There are also periodical showers of shooting-stars. About November 14th there is a noticeable shower every year. The meteors seem to radiate from the constellation Leo (i. e., their paths extended backward would cross in Leo), and therefore they are called the Leonids. The radiation is apparent. The small bodies move in parallel lines, and they seem to diverge from Leo because all parallels seen a long way off appear convergent. The orbit of these meteors is exhibited in Fig. 85. They evidently move in their orbit retrograde, or from east to west. There must be a distribution of meteors along the whole line, since they are seen every year, but every thirty-three years there is an unusual exhibition of them, and therefore it is supposed a great number are collected in one part of their orbit. The earth crosses this orbit every year, but only encounters the great body of meteors every thirty-three years, because that is their period of revolution. In 1833 there was a striking display of these meteors in the United States. The sky was covered with lines of light in every direction, and great alarm was excited among ignorant people. The last great exhibition occurred in 1866, but it did not equal that of 1833. It is supposed that the dense mass is of such extent that the earth gets into some part of it for three successive years. There was a lesser recurrence of the shower of 1866 in the two following years. The November meteors do not generally explode. They are small bodies.

Another annual shower of less brilliancy comes in August, and, as these seem to radiate from the constellation Perseus, they are called the Perseids. It is supposed that the earth passes through the orbit of the Perseids in August. Since there is no variation in different years, it is supposed that the Perseids are pretty regularly distributed along their orbit. The perihelion points of the orbits of both Leonids and Perseids touch the earth's orbit. The orbit of the August meteors reaches far beyond Neptune, and they take one hundred and twenty years to make a revolution.



Comets.

209. Description.—When comets are first seen with the telescope, before they come near enough to be visible to the naked eye, they look (as do the nebulae hereafter to be described among the fixed stars) like small clouds. They can be distinguished from the nebulae only by their motion. There are many comets called telescopic comets, because they can not be seen by the naked eye. Their approach to the sun makes them large and conspicuous. In order that we may see them, especially with the naked eye, their nearest point to the sun must be not very far from the earth's orbit.

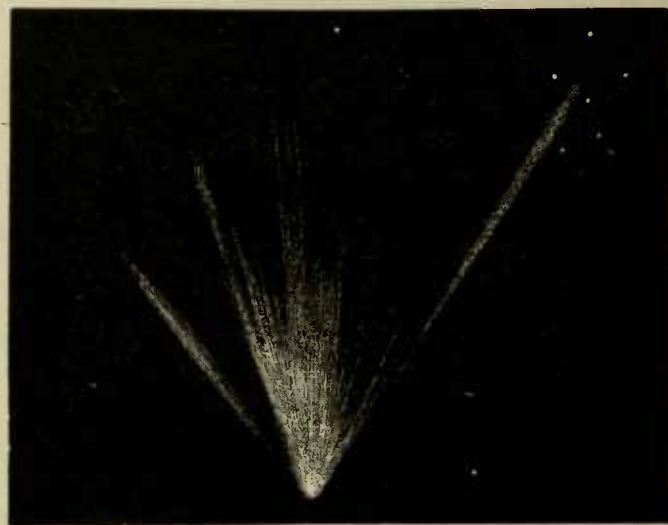
*Comet of 1264.*

210. Parts of Comets.—Comets which can be seen without a telescope have, when near the sun, three parts. They have a nucleus, which is very like a bright star, and which is surrounded by a cloudy, shining envelope called their Coma. They have also a tail, which is a long stream of light extending from the coma (see Fig. 86.) Their approach to the sun develops these parts. As they draw near that luminary, they throw out jets toward the sun which seem to be alternately attracted and repelled by him. The appearances are very like those exhibited by bodies in opposite states of electricity. It has also been noticed that large comets in the neighborhood of the sun throw off from the jets, toward the sun, a succession of apparently vaporous envelopes. These were observed with great care in the case of Donati's comet, which appeared in 1858.

*Donati's Comet (showing the Head and Envelopes).*

Fig. 87 shows these envelopes. Donati's comet was one of the most brilliant of modern times (see Fig. 88). It came so near the earth's orbit that, had the earth been on the same side of the sun, it must have passed through the comet's tail. The same envelopes were seen in Coggia's comet in 1874.

211. Tails of Comets.—As comets draw near the sun, their tails are developed with great rapidity on the side turned away from the sun. Thus, when approaching the sun, the tail follows the nucleus and coma, but in receding from the sun the nucleus and coma follow the tail. The tails of comets vary in apparent length, a few extending more than half across the heavens above the horizon. Their tenuity is very great, very faint stars being seen through them. The earth is believed to have passed through the tail of a comet in 1861, without the fact being known to its inhabitants. This was a

*Donati's Comet (general view).**Comet of 1861.*

very brilliant comet, fan-shaped. It is shown in Fig. 89. The comet of 1744 had five tails (see Fig. 90).

212. Origin of Comets.—Comets are supposed to come from the stellar spaces beyond the solar system, and to be drawn into the sphere of the sun's attraction, which, it is believed, changes the direction of their motion, making them travel on curved lines round the sun. Some

move in ellipses and are called periodical comets, since they return; while others appear to move in curves

FIG. 90.



Comet of 1744.

which lead them around the sun to go again beyond his attraction.* Whether the figure is an ellipse depends on its velocity in proportion to its distance from the sun. Where the ratio of the velocity to the distance is small, the figure is an ellipse, and the degree of eccentricity of the ellipse depends upon the same proportion. But comets are apt to have their speed increased or diminished by the attraction of the planets which they pass, and thus their orbits become changed. The attraction of the greater planets produces decided effect in changing the orbits of the comets to ellipses. In that case the aphelion points of their orbits are found not very far from the orbit of the planet. There are a number of comets thus connected with each one of the larger planets.†

213. Return of Comets.—The first comet of which the return was successfully foretold is called Halley's comet. He saw it in 1682, and found that its orbit was about the same as that of two comets which had previously appeared, one in 1531, the other in 1607. The orbit of the latter had been investigated by Kepler. The comet returned in 1759, according to Halley's prediction, only it was one month behind time, but it was shown by another astronomer that its delay was occasioned by the attraction of Jupiter and Saturn. It was proved to be identical with a comet seen and recorded in 1066, 1456, and 1531. It was last seen in 1835, when it was very brilliant and excited great interest. In 1456 it caused much alarm, as this was soon after the Turks took Constantinople and threatened the rest of Europe. It was this comet that caused the prayer, "From the comet,

the Turk, and the devil, good Lord, deliver us." It was 60° in length, and was thought to resemble a saber.

214. Meteors and Comets.—There are a number of facts showing a close connection between comets and meteors. There is a comet which has the same orbit as the November meteors, while another has that of the August meteors. Biela's comet furnishes further evidence of this relation. This is a periodic comet, and when it came again in 1845 it was found, after its appearance, to have divided into two parts, of which one disappeared before the other. In 1852 both returned, and were found still farther apart. After their disappearance, they were not again seen. But, in 1872, the comet was due, and on November 27th, the time when the earth's orbit crosses that of the comet, there was a great shower of meteors, which seemed to come from the part of the sky where the comet would have been situated. (See Note, p. 74.)

It is thought that the nucleus of a comet may consist of a collection of meteoroids. Through some telescopic comets, stars can be seen, and in this case the meteoroids must be small and far apart. But in large comets they must be very dense, if the nucleus is not solid. The tail and coma are produced by vaporization as they draw near the sun. In 1843 a brilliant comet was visible to the naked eye in sunlight. Its tail stretched 65°. It passed very near the sun, being within his exterior atmosphere, and, while thus near, passed half round the sun in two hours, revolving its tail through 180° in that short time. From this it would appear that the matter of which the tail is made is all the time changing, like that of smoke from a chimney or vapor from a kettle.

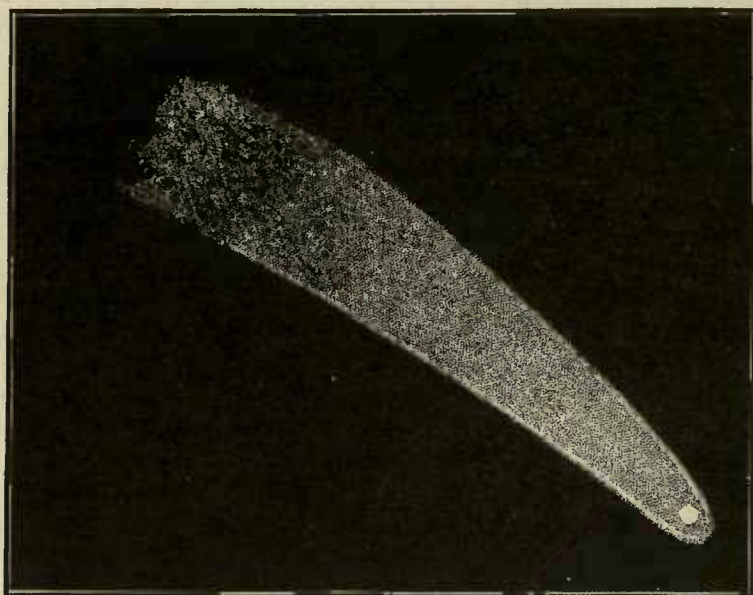
215. Comets and the Spectroscope.—Comets have been examined in the spectroscope; the brilliant comet of June, 1881, being subjected to thorough study. They show a spectrum in which are indications of hydrocarbon vapors. Their light is probably due partly to reflection of the sun's light, and partly to these vapors when acted upon by an electric discharge passing through them.

216. Numbers of Comets.—There have been about five hundred comets seen by the naked eye since the beginning of the Christian era. Over two hundred telescopic comets have been seen since the instrument was invented. Doubtless a much larger number has existed beyond the limits of our observation, which are very narrow. There are accounts of comets in ancient times, but the description is so colored by the alarm they excited that it can not be trusted. There was a great comet visible before the assassination of Julius Cæsar, 43 B. C. It was seen for several hours before sunset. It was supposed by Halley to be the same

* These curves are known to the students of conic sections as parabolas and hyperbolas.

† See Note, p. 91.

FIG. 91.

*Comet of 1811.*

comet which appeared in 1680, when its orbit was investigated by Sir Isaac Newton. A very remarkable comet was seen in 1811, just before the invasion of Russia by Napoleon Bonaparte. It was very brilliant, and was seen for seventeen months. (See Fig. 91.) (See "Comets," p. 80.)

217. The Zodiacal Light.—If, on a clear evening in late winter or in spring, we look, just at the close of twilight, at the part of the horizon at which the sun has set, we may see a sort of aurora of faint pearly light, of a half-oval figure, with its base resting on the horizon, and its axis coinciding with the ecliptic. It is visible for nearly 90° from the sun, growing fainter as the distance from him increases. It is represented in the wood-cut, Fig. 92. It is a lens-shaped appendage surrounding the sun and lying nearly in the plane of the ecliptic. It is called the Zodiacal Light.

The zodiacal light is also visible in the autumn at the beginning of the morning twilight. It is seen at evening on or near March 21st, and in the morning on or near September 1st, because at those seasons and hours the ecliptic makes its greatest angle with the horizon. At other seasons, when the ecliptic makes a smaller angle, the zodiacal light is so near the horizon that it can not clearly be distinguished, and also it sets before the sunlight has entirely faded. People who live within the tropics, where the air is very clear, can sometimes trace it entirely across the sky from east to west.

It obscures very small stars within its area on the heavens.

Various explanations of the zodiacal light have been suggested. Some observers have supposed that it might be an extension of the sun's corona. The most common opinion now attributes it to a collection of very minute meteoroids revolving about the sun nearly in the plane of the ecliptic and reflecting his light. When the zodiacal light is visible, it marks the course of the ecliptic very clearly.

FIG. 92.



NOTE.—Biela's comet had a period of $6\frac{2}{3}$ years. It would have been due in 1879, but neither comet nor meteors were seen. In November, 1885, it was again due. The comet was not seen, but on the nights of November 25th, 26th, 27th, there was a brilliant meteor-shower radiating from Andromeda and reaching its maximum on November 27th. It is now regarded as nearly certain that Biela's comet has broken up into a collection of meteo-

roids revolving round the sun. This meteor group is called the Andromedes, or Bielids. Over a hundred meteor swarms are known, but the Perseids, Leonids, and Andromedes are the most important. During the shower of November 27, 1885, a piece of meteoric iron fell at Mazapil, in northern Mexico, but in no other shower has any aërolite fallen. Many astronomers regard this as a piece of Biela's comet.

PART III.

THE HEAVENS OUTSIDE OF THE SOLAR SYSTEM.

CHAPTER XI.

218. The stars are usually divided into fixed stars and planets. The latter class includes the stars revolving round the sun, both primaries and secondaries, or moons. All other stars were called *fixed stars*, because they showed no change of place as regards each other, though they all apparently revolve round the earth.

219. Movements of the Fixed Stars.—The ancient astronomers at Alexandria ascertained with some accuracy the relative positions of the chief fixed stars, and, in the early part of the last century, Halley compared the records left by them with the results of observation, and he was led to believe that the so-called fixed stars have changed relative place. Owing to their enormous distances from us, we perceive this motion very slowly, and so it was only detected by the combined work of men living many centuries from each other. Other astronomers began to investigate the subject. Finally, they came to the conclusion that the stars examined seemed all to be moving farther from a point in Hercules, and nearer to a point of the celestial sphere situated exactly opposite Hercules, or 180° from him. This is exactly the appearance which would be produced if our sun were moving toward Hercules, carrying with it all the bodies dependent on it. Thus they were led to think it probable that the sun has a real motion. This motion, called the *Secular Motion of the Sun*, appears to be very slow, only because it is measured by bodies at such enormous distances from us. (See "Hercules," p. 80.)

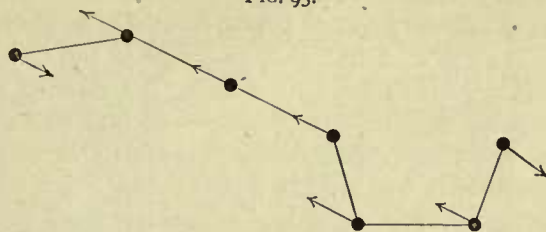
220. Secular Motion of Stars.—Besides these changes of place, which could be explained by the supposition that we ourselves, with the solar system, are in motion, there were others which could not be thus accounted for, and they led to the belief that the stars have a very slow real motion of their own, which is called the *Secular Motion of the Stars*. The slowness of the motion is apparent, resulting from the enormous distance of the stars. The student who has seen a train of cars moving at a very great distance remembers that they seem to creep over the earth. On the other hand, a traveler may move rapidly for a whole day, but, if he measured his motion by a far-distant mountain only, he would not see that he had changed place.

After the invention of the spectroscope, it was used in studying this problem. The displacement or bending

of lines toward the red or the violet end of the spectrum indicates motion from or toward the observer. The results in regard to the motion of the stars confirm the previous conclusions.

221. Star-Drift.—It is found that stars in certain parts of the heavens have motions in a common direction. Mr. Proctor, who has specially studied this subject, proposes for this motion the name of *Star-Drift*. Thus five stars in the Great Dipper have a common motion in the same direction, while the two others move in another direction (see Fig. 93). This must, in the course of ages,

FIG. 93.



alter the figure of the Great Dipper. The spectroscope confirms these conclusions by showing that these five stars recede from us.

222. Motion of First-Magnitude Stars.—It will interest students to know that, of the first-magnitude stars, Sirius, Regulus, Betelgeuse, and Rigel are found by the spectroscope to be receding from us, while Arcturus, Vega, and Pollux approach us. The rates of motion even are computed, but the results are not more than an approximation. The spectroscope, the student must remember, only tells about approach toward the observer or recession from him, but nothing as to the general direction. A little reflection about motions of persons (or bodies) whom he sees on earth will make the student understand that they may move in many different directions, any one of which might make them draw near us or recede from us.

Nothing, therefore, can at present be known, from the observed facts, in regard to the figure of the sun's motion, or that of the stars. The epithet *fixed stars* is still used for distinction.

223. Physical Constitution of the Stars.—The spectroscope shows that they resemble our sun. All show some dark Fraunhofer lines, and thus it is evident that the luminous spheres are enveloped in vapors absorbing the light from some of the rays. The lines show that

they contain elements known to us, and existing in our sun.

The spectra of different stars vary somewhat. They have been arranged in four classes. The stars vary in color, as any observer may see. Thus, Antares and Aldebaran are red; Vega Lyrae, Altair, and Spica Virginis are pale blue; Capella and Sirius are white; Arcturus, Pollux, and Procyon are yellow. The colors correspond generally to differences in the spectra, but these may be partially due to differences in the heat and density. The yellow stars are more like our sun.

224. Distances of the Stars.—For a long time it was thought that no fixed star showed any apparent change of place, due to the earth's change of position, in six months, between points 185,000,000 miles apart. But refined and accurate instruments and methods of observation have shown that some of the stars exhibit a very small displacement, not in any instance amounting to 1". The star α Centauri has a pretty well-ascertained parallax, and is supposed to be the nearest of the fixed stars to us. But the distance must be about twenty billions of miles. These numbers convey little idea to us, and it will perhaps give a more definite notion to the student if he is told that it would take light more than three years to reach us from α Centauri. Other stars are probably nearly all much more distant. (See "Light Year," p. 80.)

225. Volumes of the Stars.—None of the fixed stars show any disk, even when examined with the most powerful telescopes. This is one way in which observers with the telescope readily distinguish planets from stars. The telescope aids us in observing a star merely by its power of collecting light. It does not magnify the stars, so we can not measure their diameters.

Magnitudes. (See p. 80.)

226. Numbers of the Stars.—Observers with the naked eye see over six thousand stars. With the great telescopes of modern times they see many millions, but no estimate has been made approaching exactness.

227. Double and Multiple Stars.—Some stars which are single to the naked eye are resolved by a telescope into two or three or sometimes more stars. In some cases this is due to the fact that stars not near together are on the same line of vision, and in such cases they are called *optically double stars*. But in many instances it is found that these stars are connected

by revolving around a common center; and in that case they are called *physically double stars*. The motion and even the period of some stars are clearly determined, as in ξ of the Great Bear, which completes a revolution in sixty years. ϵ Lyrae can be resolved into a double star by a good opera-glass (young people with good eyes see it double without a glass), and a powerful telescope

shows that each of these stars is double. (See Figs. 94 and 95.) Double and multiple stars are very often of different colors, and sometimes of complementary colors. (See "Masses of Binary Stars," p. 80.)

228. Variable Stars.—This name is applied to stars which change in brightness. Many of these have periodical variations. The most noted are the stars Algol or β Persei; Mira in Cetus, or the Whale; and Eta, or η , in the ship Argo.

The changes of Algol, or β Persei, are of such short period that any observer may detect them if he knows

FIG. 94.



Orbit of a double Star.

FIG. 95.



The double-double Star in the Constellation Lyra. 1. As seen in an opera-glass. 2. As seen in a small telescope. 3. As seen in a telescope of great power.

FIG. 96.



The Pleiades in a large Telescope.

when to look for them. Algol occupies seven hours out of every sixty-nine in making a gradual change in luster or brilliancy. Algol is usually a faint star of the second magnitude, but during twenty minutes at the middle of the seven hours, it becomes a star of the fourth magnitude. The change is very gradual. In order to remark it, it is necessary to compare Algol, before the beginning of the variation, with some other star of the same size. This gives a standard by which to observe the change. The exact period in which the variations of Algol are completed is two days, twenty hours, forty-nine minutes. (See "Algol," p. 80.)

Mira in the Whale, or α Ceti, as the star is called by astronomers, is a star whose variations can be seen with the naked eye. It has a period of nearly a year. From a star of the second magnitude it becomes invisible. Its variations are not altogether regular.

Eta, in the ship Argo, or the star η Argus, is an irregular variable, which is never visible in the United States. It was seen by Sir John Herschel brighter than any other star except Sirius, and he says it then began to decrease and passed slowly out of sight.*

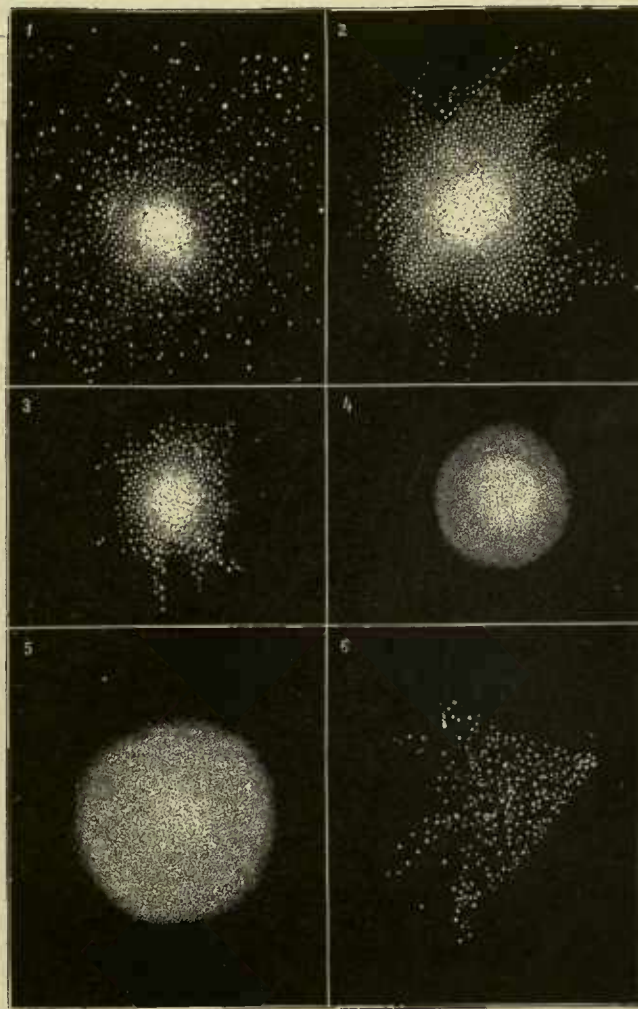
229. Temporary Stars.—There are instances of stars which have suddenly appeared and shone for a time with great brilliancy, disappearing gradually. In the year 1572 such a star appeared in the constellation Cassiopeia, and was described by the astronomer Tycho Brahe. It outshone Jupiter and Venus, and could be seen at noon. After six months, it disappeared, and has not been heard of since. It underwent several changes of color while visible. In 1604 a new star of the first magnitude appeared in the constellation Ophiuchus. It was visible more than a year, and then disappeared. This is sometimes called Kepler's star, because this astronomer observed and recorded its changes and appearance. In 1866 a telescopic star in Corona Borealis suddenly increased to the second magnitude and afterward faded. It was examined with the spectroscope, which gave evidence that hydrogen was the chief agent in the great outburst. The red flames of the sun's chromosphere are due to hydrogen, and it is supposed that this star showed phenomena like the red prominences, only on a much larger scale.†

230. Star-Clusters.—The Pleiades are a cluster of stars. The ordinary observer sees six stars; good eyes sometimes detect seven; a small telescope brings out many more; and one of the large telescopes shows over four hundred. (See Figs. 96, 97.) The telescope shows fine globular clusters in Hercules, in Aquarius, and in Toucan, in the southern hemisphere. One of the finest

is in Centaurus. In the sword-handle of Perseus, there appears to be a star which is hazy to the naked eye, but a telescope of moderate power shows that it is a very brilliant double cluster. (See "Pleiades," p. 80.)

231. The Galaxy, or Milky-Way.—This has been described in Chapter I. When examined through the telescope, it is seen to be composed of very small stars whose combined light creates the milky appearance. It

FIG. 97.



Star-Clusters. 1. In Libra. 2. In Hercules. 3. In Capricornus. 4. In Serpens. 5. In Aquarius. 6. In Gemini.

contains many clusters of stars. The numbers of the fixed stars in general increase in the direction of the Milky-Way and in it. This is more evident when we use a telescope, for the telescopic stars greatly outnumber the others.

232. Nebulæ.—A nebula looks like a patch of cloudy light. There are two classes of cloud-like patches: those whose light is due to a great collection of telescopic stars, and those which no telescope yet used by us has

* See "Variable Stars," p. 80.

† See "Temporary Stars," p. 80.

FIG. 98.

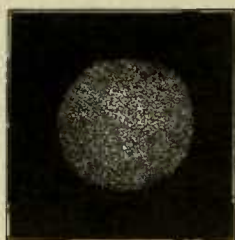
*Planetary Nebula in Ursa Major.*

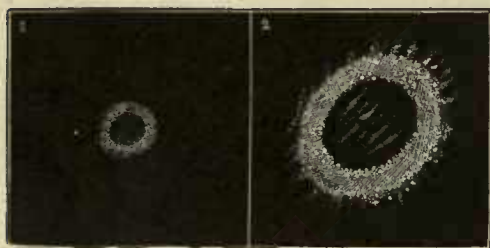
FIG. 99.

*Elliptical Nebula near γ Andromedæ.*

resolved into stars. The latter are nebulae, and of these many have been shown by the spectroscope to owe their light to masses of glowing gas. (See "Nebulae," p. 80.)

There is a remarkable nebula in the sword-handle of Orion. It can

FIG. 100.

*Ring-Nebula in Lyra.*

be seen by the naked eye surrounding the middle of the three stars in the handle. It was examined by Professors Secchi and Huggins with



FIG. 101.

the spectroscope, and they found lines leading them to believe it composed of glowing gas. Another remarkable nebula which can be seen with the naked eye is the great nebula of Andromeda. The triangle in Cancer contains a small cloudy patch called Præsepe, and sometimes the Bee-hive Nebula, but it is a star-cluster. Great numbers of nebulae are seen with the telescope, but they are most numerous at a distance from the Milky-Way. Some, as seen in Fig. 98, are round in appearance like a planet, and are therefore called Planetary Nebulae. Other

FIG. 102.

*Nebulous Star, Orionis.*

nebulae are elliptical (Fig. 99), while still others are ring-shaped (Fig. 100). Some are oval (Fig. 101). Some con-

FIG. 103.

*Crab Nebula in Taurus.*

sist of a hazy circle surrounding a star, which is therefore called a nebulous star (Fig. 102). Besides these,

FIG. 104.



there are nebulae of many irregular shapes (Fig. 103). Some are spiral, and look as if they might be in rotation around some central point. (See Figs. 104 and 105.) Fig. 106 is a representation of the nebula of Orion.

FIG. 105.

*Spiral Nebula in Canes Venatici.*

233. The Magellanic Clouds.—Travelers in the southern hemisphere of the earth long ago brought accounts of two large masses of cloudy light which they saw near the south pole of the heavens. They are

called the Magellanic Clouds, and they are further distinguished from each other as Nubecula Major and Nubecula Minor.

FIG. 106.

*Great Nebula of Orion.*

Nubecula Major is, of course, the larger, and it is so bright that it is not obscured by the full moon, which causes Nubecula Minor to become invisible. When seen through a powerful telescope, they are both resolved into stars and separate nebulae. Of the latter, Herschel counted 278, besides more than fifty outlying nebulae. (See Fig. 107.)

FIG. 107.

*Part of the Nubecula Major.*

234. The Nebular Theory.—A great many astronomers believe that suns and planets are formed from nebulae. The nebulous matter is supposed to be very hot and rotating rapidly. It gradually condenses and flat-

tens into a rotating disk. This throws off rings which revolve and finally condense into planets, the central and large mass constituting a sun. The facts which they adduce in support of this theory are: the evidences of the earth's former fused condition; the flattening at the poles seen both in earth and planets; the fact that planets and moons (with two exceptions) all revolve from west to east, or in the same direction with each other; the rings of Saturn; the partially fused and vaporous condition of the larger planets, which would cool more slowly; and the spiral form common among the nebulae.

The opponents of this theory consider the fact that the moons of Uranus and Neptune revolve from east to west a serious objection to it, and also the fact that one of the moons of Mars revolves around Mars in a shorter time than Mars revolves on his axis.

235. Southern Circumpolar Constellations.—To people in the United States these are in the Circle of Perpetual Disparition, so that the student can not see them in nature, but he should know something of them. An account of them is placed here, because they may be overlooked in the Description of Constellations in the Appendix, which is intended for reference only:

The chief groups are: *Ara, the Altar*; *Crux, the Cross*; *Dorado, the Sword-Fish*; *Hydrus, the Water-Snake*; *Pavo, the Peacock*; the Southern Triangle, and *Toucanus, the Toucan*. Three—viz., *Phoenix, Grus, the Crane*, and *Centaurus, the Centaur*—can be partially seen in the Southern States, but the two first-magnitude stars in Centaurus are not seen in the United States at all. The Southern Cross contains one first, three second-magnitude stars. It is the glory of the Southern skies. There are six first-magnitude stars around the southern pole. One of these, Canopus, can be seen in Tennessee. It presents a fine appearance in Georgia, and in the clear skies of Florida it is an object of much interest to visitors acquainted with astronomy. It is south of Sirius.

NOTE.—(See "Photography in Astronomy," p. 80.)

NOTES TO CHAPTERS IX, X, XI.

Mars.—In 1877, when Mars was in opposition at his perihelion, an Italian astronomer, Schiaparelli, saw with a telescope a curious network of straight dark lines on the planet, connecting what we regard as seas and oceans. They are called "canals," but the student must not fall into the mistake of supposing that they can be artificial works. At subsequent oppositions, Schiaparelli's report received some partial confirmation from other observers. Later, Schiaparelli reported that at certain seasons of Mars the lines were doubled, or replaced by parallel lines; also that a supposed continent, called Libya, seemed to become inundated at intervals. This causes great interest in the prospect of seeing Mars in 1892, when opposition again comes at perihelion.

The Asteroids.—In 1889, two hundred and eighty-nine asteroids, or planetoids, were known. These bodies cause some irregularity in the motion of Mars, enabling mathematicians to calculate their united mass, which is about one fourth the earth's mass. As the united mass of those we know is so small, there must be many more to discover. The brightest of the known asteroids, Vesta, which is just visible to the unaided eye near opposition, may be from two hundred to four hundred miles in diameter. The undiscovered ones must be very minute, and there may be thousands of them. There are two theories of their origin. One is based on the now prevalent idea that all the planets were once rings of meteorites resembling Saturn's ring. The

attraction of so great a mass as Jupiter so near these rings would affect them, and this, it is believed, caused these rings to break up into many small bodies instead of collecting into a large planet. Other astronomers think it more likely that the asteroids were once a large planet which was broken up by a series of explosions.

Neptune.—Prof. Young says that sunlight at Neptune is equal to the light of a large electric arc lamp seen at a distance of a few feet. He says it would equal the light of six hundred and eighty-seven full moons, and would be abundantly sufficient for visual purposes.

Meteors.—Twenty-four of the known chemical elements are found in meteorites. In the United States several hundred fragments have fallen at once in the following places: in 1807, at Newton, Connecticut; in 1860, at Concord, Ohio; in 1875, at Amana, Iowa; and in 1879, in Emmett County, Iowa.

Comets.—Prof. Young says that the total number of comets must be enormous. In 1881 two were seen by the naked eye near together. Fourteen comets have been seen at their return; the orbits of fifty indicate a return; twenty-six of these have periods of less than one hundred years; the period of Encke's comet, the shortest known, is three years and a half. There are several groups of comets of which the members belonging to each have nearly the same orbits, and they come after one another at intervals, as if they might once have been united. We know nothing of the masses of comets, except that they must be very small in comparison with the earth's mass. In volume they are the largest bodies known, therefore their average density must be very small; and, since part is probably solid, the density of their tails must be inconceivably small. The tails of some large comets have extended a hundred million miles. The tails are usually curved, because the particles retain their motion after they are thrown off.

Hercules.—The point in Hercules to which our sun and his attendant planets are moving is called the "Apex of the Sun's Way."

"Light Year."—This name is sometimes given to the distance light travels in a year. It is a measure of length used to give an intelligible idea of the stellar distances. Light travels 186,000 miles in a second, and the light year is about 63,000 times the distance of the earth from the sun.

Magnitudes.—This word is used by astronomers to describe the comparative brightness of the stars. Average stars in each of the six original magnitudes differ from those of the nearest inferior magnitude by about two and a half of their light. But, since those in each class vary, fractional magnitudes are much used now. At Oxford (England) and Cambridge (Massachusetts) the comparative light of the stars is systematically studied by means of a photometer (light-measurer).

Masses of the Binary Stars.—The physically double stars, which are by far the most numerous class of the two, are called Binary Stars. When we know the parallax of a binary star, we can estimate its distance from us and the diameter of its orbit. By observation, we find the period of its revolution, and then, assuming that gravity is the cause of its revolution, we can, by calculation, find its mass in comparison with the mass of our sun. Sirius is known to be a binary; and in this way it is estimated, very roughly, that it has about five times the mass of our sun. If we could know the diameter of Sirius, we could estimate its density; but Sirius is only a point of light in our best telescopes.

Variable Stars.—A few stars, "perhaps a dozen," have shown a continuous change in brightness since the earliest time of observing them. Beta Libræ, the most northern of the two second-magnitude stars in Libra, was once brighter than Antares in Scorpio. As the fixed stars are probably, like our sun, hot bodies cooling, changes in them are not surprising.

The Pleiades.—The stars of this cluster have motion in a common direction (with the exception of a few stars which seem simply to be in line with the cluster), and they have spectra alike; therefore it is believed that they form a connected system of stars of some kind.

Temporary Stars.—In the summer of 1885 a new telescopic star appeared in the nebula of Andromeda. It increased rapidly in luster from its appearance in August to September, when it had attained the size of a seven-

and-a-half magnitude star. It then decreased, and after six months could not be seen. This phenomenon is supposed to be due to some sudden evolution of glowing gas in a star previously too small to be seen with the most powerful telescopes. In 1872 a telescopic star in Cygnus in like manner suddenly blazed up to the second magnitude, and then decreased to its former appearance in a month. There are on record eleven such cases of temporary stars, one having come before the Christian era. The last three, in 1866, 1872, and 1885, were examined with the spectroscope.

Photography in Astronomy.—More than thirty years ago, good pictures of the moon's surface were made by photography. Since the use of the very sensitive plates, which have made instantaneous photographs possible, the applications of photography to astronomy have greatly increased. If the eye looks long at an object, the continued impression on the retina does not make the object more distinct, but the long exposure of the sensitive plates accumulates the effect on them; and, when the heavens are photographed, stars are made visible which can not be seen with the same power of the telescope used to enlarge the photographic picture. Thus, such pictures can make stars visible that we can not see with our present telescopes. Some remarkable charts of parts of the heavens were made by the brothers Henry, at Paris, and by others; and in 1887 a congress of astronomers was held at Paris which determined to attempt a photographic chart of the whole heavens, which should make stars visible to the fourteenth magnitude. This work is divided among a number of observatories in the northern and southern hemispheres, and it is estimated that it will occupy five or six years. A photographic chart is, of course, of minute accuracy in regard to distances on it.

Photography is also used in the systematic study of stellar spectra; and, as improvements are constantly made in sensitive plates, it is becoming an ally of remarkable value to astronomers. The great obstacle, at present, is that the plates are not equally sensitive to rays of different colors.

Nebulæ.—We know that the light of the nebulæ comes from gas; but this may possibly contain small, solid particles like meteorites.

Rotations—Mercury and Venus.—Schiaparelli announced in 1889 that, by a study of markings on Mercury, he had found that this planet, like our moon in its revolution round the earth, always turns the same face to the center, and thus its rotation on its axis must occupy the exact time of its revolution in its orbit. Schiaparelli's conclusions are generally regarded as correct, though not yet confirmed by others. Schiaparelli's observations of Venus make it probable that she also makes her rotation and revolution in the same period of time.

Algol.—Vogel has lately explained Algol's obscuration by evidence that the star is a binary, revolving with an opaque companion round a common center, and coming periodically between us and Algol. To show the supposed position of Algol's orbit, let the student take a paper circle which has one diameter drawn on it, and hold it in such a position that he sees only its edge, and also so that the diameter points to his eye. Algol at obscuration would be at the remote end of the diameter, and the dark star at the near end. Study of the circle so placed will show, that, if Algol revolves on an orbit thus situated edgewise to us, the spectroscope ought, before Algol's obscuration, to show that star moving farther from us, and, after obscuration, coming nearer (see 176). By photographing Algol's spectrum, Vogel gained evidence of such motion. Vogel found data to compute the volume and density of this one fixed star—Algol. He gives the diameter of Algol as 1,160,000 miles, that of his dark companion as 840,000 miles, and their united density as one fifth that of our sun.

The spectra of some stars repeatedly photographed show a periodical doubling of spectroscopic lines, as if spectra from two sources of light were seen overlapping. It is now believed that each such star is a binary, with both of the pair luminous, and situated at the time of the double, like Algol and its dark companion, at obscuration. The pair are too close for telescopic separation, and are called spectroscopic binaries. The star Mizar, at the bend of the Great Dipper's handle, is a telescopic binary, but one of the pair now proves to be a spectroscopic binary, thus making Mizar a triple star.

TALKS WITH OBSERVERS.

(*For end of Art. 45.*) Students are warned not to substitute the mere study of the diagram, Fig. 7, page 17, for that observation of nature which it is intended to aid. On the very next clear evening after studying Chapter III, they should go out just as soon as there are stars enough visible to trace the constellations, and should make a study of nature.

(1.) They must first trace the half ring of the zodiac. The constellations will probably not be just those whose names represent them in Fig. 7. The ecliptic will, nevertheless, extend through them as it does in the diagram, and can be traced by stars on and near it. The semicircle that it makes will, of course, be less definite than the visible line of the drawing (Fig. 7), but the zodiac will be a definite ring, and the student's imagination can help him to represent the line of the ecliptic passing through it. (2.) The observer must next note the zodiacal constellation lying nearest to the eastern horizon. Astronomers tell him, that the earth's center is passing between the sun's center and some point of that group. His own observation and thought will give to this statement confirmation. The sun, which he knows is not far below the western horizon, was on it at sunset, and the group in the east, from its position, must have been on the eastern horizon at sunset. The earth's rotation on her axis has made both sun and star-group move. The student will thus see clear confirmation of the statement that the earth is passing between the sun and some point of this star-group. If he wishes to satisfy himself further, he can come out at midnight, when the sun is on the meridian below the horizon, and find this star-group on the meridian above the horizon.

Just at this point the observer may think that the diagram of the book (Fig. 7) incorrectly represents, in one particular, the positions of the bodies at sunset. It will seem to him that the sun, as he saw it at sunset, is on the semicircle, or at one side of the figure, whereas, in the drawing, it is placed at the center. The reason is as follows: On what an ordinary observer would call "the western side of the sun at sunset," there is a zodiacal constellation. Anybody could have seen it for a month past, at dark, passing out of sight in the west. Now this group, and in fact every group of the zodiac, has been seen at dark just above the eastern horizon, where the observer now sees another, whose position was discussed in the foregoing paragraph. When each group was seen in that place, it seemed very far from the sun; no one ever seemed any nearer to the sun than the others. As our theory supposes that the earth is the mover, but the sun and fixed stars have not moved, the sun is represented in the diagram as being at the center of the semicircle, equally distant from all parts of the zodiac.

(3.) Let the student next imagine, in the space above him, a great semicircle, part of the earth's orbit, extending round between ecliptic and sun. The star-groups would be little changed from what they were at sunset; so let the student imagine them to be as they were, and imagine the sun in the west. One end

of the semicircle would be beyond the sun, and the other would come down through the observer's position to the earth's center. Let the observer imagine the earth as situated beyond the sun six months ago, and, during those six months, coming round on her orbit to her present position.

The facts on which all these suppositions are founded are, that in the successive six months the earth has been seen between the sun and all of these star-groups, in order, beginning in the west. The student must, it is probable, take a good many of these facts on testimony. If he has been observing the heavens he may have seen two, or perhaps three, of these zodiacal constellations above the eastern horizon at dark. If not, future observation will enable him to depend less on testimony, when at dark he looks up and thinks of the earth's revolution in her orbit.

NOTE.—In the foregoing discussion of the earth's annual motion, which is to be used after Art. 46 is studied, the reader has been told that the sun is very far away from all the stars of the zodiac; and in the diagram, page 17, the sun has been placed at the center of the circle which represents the ecliptic. Nevertheless, in Art. 47, and in a part of Chapter IV, the sun is spoken of as "on the ecliptic," just as he would appear to be if we could see sun and stars at the same time. The reason is as follows: The sun's apparent falling back upon the ecliptic is used in measuring the year of our calendar. Although we do not see this movement, we can perfectly measure it, as is shown in Art. 51. It is true the earth, not the sun, is the real mover; but we do not see the earth move, or know that she does so, except by changes in the position of other bodies.

(*For Art. 50.*) **The Ecliptic and the Zodiac.**—Unless we neglect or refuse to look at the heavens at dark, the groups of the zodiac will be impressed on our organs of sight. The appearances of the visible part of the zodiac, or, in other words, the *aspects* of the zodiac, have all, at different seasons, their meanings. The observations required in order to see the facts, and also the explanations, are perfectly simple and easy to a person who knows the zodiacal constellations in nature. The following directions tell what to note. — Surely every student will desire to look at the heavens with intelligence.

During the evenings of *November* and *December* we may see an aspect of the zodiac which the student will identify most readily by knowing that Pisces is on the meridian when we see it. This aspect is also above the horizon at sunset, December 22d. To make the meaning of this aspect plain, the student is reminded that the direction in which the zodiac extends from the sun at sunset must be that in which the earth has been moving in her orbit for the previous six months, since the earth's orbit lies between the ecliptic and the sun. On December 22d the earth has traveled northeast for six months, and we know that the sun has appeared to travel south for six months. These facts show that the earth's motion accounts for the apparent movement of the sun. The observer is to note the following points: (1.) That the zodiac extends northeast from the western horizon when Pisces is on the meridian; (2.) That this aspect

comes at an earlier and earlier hour every evening, Pisces having passed the meridian before dark on December 22d, thus confirming the statement of astronomers that this is the aspect of the zodiac and ecliptic at sunset, December 22d.

During the evenings of *May and June* we can see Virgo on the meridian, giving us the aspect of the zodiac at sunset, June 22d. It is easy to see that the zodiac extends southeast from the western horizon. During the six months before June 22d the earth travels southeast, and we know that the sun appears to travel north during the same six months. The observer can see, at dark, June 22d, that Virgo has passed the meridian, thus confirming the statement of astronomers that this is the aspect of the zodiac at sunset, June 22d.

During the fine evenings of *February and March* we can see Gemini on the meridian. This gives us the aspect of sunset, March 20th. The important point to note is, that the ecliptic and zodiac are more nearly perpendicular to the horizon than at any other season. This is extremely easy to see, and several interesting phenomena, coming near March 20th, and described in this book, depend on the angle made by the two circles. This aspect of the ecliptic, with Gemini on the meridian, shows us the sun's path on the ecliptic during summer, or from March 20th to September 21st. The path curves northward, though the student will not think so, unless he remembers that, on the heavens, curving "northward" means nearer to the celestial north pole, not nearer to the north point of the horizon. The whole visible path lies north of the equinoctial, crossing it in the east and west points of the horizon. When the summer solstice in Gemini is on the meridian, it gives us the altitude of the sun at noon on June 22d. It shows that the sun's rays are not vertical, even on June 22d.

During the evenings of *August and September* we can see Sagittarius on the meridian. This gives us the aspect of the zodiac and ecliptic September 22d, at sunset. The important point to note is the long, slanting lines in which the ecliptic and zodiac meet the horizon. It is easy to see that the ecliptic is greatly inclined to the horizon, and this fact explains several interesting phenomena described in this book. Also, the visible half of the ecliptic shows the path traveled by the sun in winter, or from September 21st to March 20th. When the winter solstice in Sagittarius is on the meridian, it shows the altitude of the sun at noon, December 22d.

(For end of Art. 125.) **Opposition and Conjunction.**—The following exercise will visualize* these important positions in the student's mind:

Let the student imagine that it is the day on which he knows from the almanac that a planet is in opposition, and that the hour is sunset. The planet would be on the eastern horizon, opposite the sun. Let the student, to aid the imagination, point first in the direction of the sun at sunset, next in the direction

of the planet. Let him then answer the following questions: (1.) Which of the three bodies, sun, earth, and planet, is between the others at opposition? (2.) Is the planet or the earth more distant from the sun?

There is always a point of the earth's orbit on the side of the sun turned away from us. At sunset it is west of the sun. Let the student, still supposing that it is sunset, extend his forefinger in the direction of that point of the earth's orbit. Let him again point in the direction of the planet at opposition. (3.) Is the earth at opposition on the side of her orbit nearest to the planet, or on the other side?

The student should now draw a horizontal line on a piece of paper. At the middle of the line let him write S for sun. To a person facing south the earth is at the left of the sun. Let the student then make a dot an inch at least to the left of the S, and mark it E. Let him draw a circle with center S and radius S E. Let him find, from his own answers, the place of the planet on the horizontal line. Let him make a dot there, and mark it P at O. Let him, holding the paper with E to the left of S, mark the top of his paper *up*, and the bottom *down*.

Conjunction.—At the conjunction of a planet, it is situated in the same direction from us that the sun is. Let us suppose that it is sunset, and that the same planet is at conjunction. Point in the direction of the sun and planet. Questions: (1.) If you face south, is the planet on your left or your right? (2.) If the sun has not moved, and the planet's apparent change of place, from opposition to conjunction, is due not to its own motion but to the earth's revolution in her orbit, is there anything in all this to change the planet's distance from the sun? If there is not, then draw a dot for the planet on the horizontal line, at the right of the earth, and just as far from the sun as the planet was at opposition. Mark it P at C. If the drawing is correct, a circle which you must draw now, with radius P S, will pass through both the positions of the planet. (3.) *Look at your drawing*, and tell whether you think a planet is nearer the earth at opposition or at conjunction. (4.) Suppose you saw the planet Mars at opposition, and some months afterward at conjunction, and you found it very plainly diminished in brightness, do you think your drawing would help you to account for the change? (5.) *Look at the drawing*. Is the planet at conjunction on the side of its orbit nearest the earth, or on the side farthest from the earth? (6.) Let us again suppose that it is sunset, and that a planet is in conjunction with the sun. Point in the direction of the sun and planet. If the suppositions made were true, could you see the planet? Give reason. (7.) Where would the earth's rotation carry the sun by dark? Where would it carry the planet? (8.) Would you see a planet at all at the precise time of its conjunction? (See Art. 125.)

(For end of Art. 129.) **Superior Planets.**—A student can, to some extent, study in nature the sidereal revolution, on the very first starry night, provided he has already studied in nature the earth's motion as directed in a previous "Talk with Observers." He should go out as soon as the stars become visible. The earth is always between the sun and a point of

* We have a visualized idea of a thing when we can represent it in our imaginations as it exists in nature. A mere representation by diagram or apparatus does not make us think of it as we see it in nature.

the ecliptic which is just above the eastern horizon at dark. If Jupiter, Saturn, or Mars were seen at that point, or a very little north or south of it, the planet would be at opposition. The earth would be passing between the planet and the sun, which would be just below the western horizon. This would be evident to an observer who represented in imagination the positions of the three bodies. Let the student imagine Saturn shining just above the eastern horizon. Next, let him trace the ecliptic by stars. Then he should imagine the earth's orbit extending a semicircle in space between this traced ecliptic and the sun. He can represent to himself the earth traveling from west to east around this half of her orbit during the past six months, and also during the corresponding six months of previous years. He knows that during these same six months of every year the earth passes once between the sun and every point in succession of the ecliptic as visible.

Now Saturn seems to advance east alongside of the ecliptic; and, therefore, when Saturn is seen at dark just above the eastern horizon, the portion of the ecliptic visible between the eastern and western sides of the horizon would be very nearly that along which Saturn had traveled in the last half of his sidereal revolution, just completed. The student, standing under the stars at dark, should consider all this. Then let him imagine that another observer were present, who had been watching the heavens for fifteen years. This person could say, "I see fourteen points at regular intervals along the ecliptic, beginning in the west, where, in successive years, I have seen Saturn when the earth was passing nearly in line between the planet and the sun, just as she is doing now." The student who had studied the earth's motions a little in nature could accept this statement with some intelligence, and it would be evident, if this testimony of an eye-witness were true, that Saturn would, in fourteen and a half years, have traveled nearly half-way round the sun.

Let the observer, still standing under the stars, consider the case of Jupiter. If Jupiter were the planet seen in the east at dark, the earth would be passing in line between Jupiter and the sun, and nearly the half of Jupiter's path last traveled would lie alongside the ecliptic, between the eastern and western horizons. The same eye-witness could say, "I see six points along the ecliptic, one in each zodiacal constellation, beginning in the west, in which I have seen Jupiter at times during the last five and a half years, when the earth was passing nearly in line between the planet and the sun." If this testimony were true, it would be evident that, in the last five and a half years, Jupiter had traveled nearly half-way round the sun.

By following these directions the student's knowledge of the motion of superior planets is, to some extent, a knowledge of nature, and not mere book-study. But this is not enough. There is a vividness in seeing the thing itself, and then going over the reasoning, which is the only perfect security against confusion of mind about it. The student should, therefore, at once learn when the next oppositions of Jupiter and Saturn occur, and, bearing them in mind, should go out and repeat this

study of nature at the exact dates, or, if it is cloudy, then on the very first clear night afterward. He should follow this up by watching the proper motion of the planet seen at opposition until it ceases to be evening star. If he sees it again at a second opposition, he will have gained a very reasonable and firmly fixed knowledge of the planet's revolution round the sun. Whenever he saw the planet afterward, he would at a glance recognize, from its change of position, its progress in its sidereal revolution.

During some part of the school year Saturn and Jupiter can and will always be seen at dark. For many years to come the opposition of one or the other will come into the school year, but will not always do so. Saturn was at opposition February 25, 1889, and will be at the same about thirteen days later in every year. Jupiter was at opposition June 24, 1889, and will again be about a month later every year.

Students who see the planets at opposition should draw them with the constellation in which they are found. They should give their teacher a copy to keep for the benefit of his future classes. No evidence of any eye-witness will give your teacher's future pupils such a convincing sense of reality as that coming from students of their own school or teacher.

(*Note on Art. 135.*) That the apparent retrograde movement of superior planets is due to the earth's motion only will be made clearer if the experiment of Art. 135 is repeated, with the slight variation of making the person on the outer circle stand still while the other walks. The latter will see the retrograde movement repeated as before. The following easily performed experiment illustrates the statement in Art. 136. To understand what it proves, the performer must remember that our eyes are our observers, and when we shut them alternately the observer changes place. Let the reader hold up a finger and close his eyes by turns, and he will find that when the left eye becomes the observer the finger seems to move over the background to the right, and it moves to the left when the right eye is used. Let him then try this experiment first with the finger held an inch from the nose, then with the finger about a foot from the nose, and finally with the finger at arm's-length from the nose. Careful observation during the experiment will show that the movement of an observer makes another body appear to retrograde over a smaller extent of background the farther it is removed from him. The theory of Copernicus, that the earth revolves round the sun, makes it necessary to suppose that the fixed stars are at an enormous distance from us. When Copernicus (a German contemporary with Columbus) published his theory, this made for a time a great difficulty in its acceptance. But the wonderfully refined instruments used by astronomers in this century have shown a very minute movement of the fixed stars, which must be caused by the earth's motion, since it is always in contrary direction to it. Thus, this is a demonstration of the earth's motion. It is called the "annual parallax" of the fixed stars.

APPENDIX A.

DESCRIPTION OF CONSTELLATIONS.

ALPHABETICALLY ARRANGED.

(These are intended merely for reference, to aid students in learning the constellations from nature.)

ABBREVIATIONS. { I.—1st m., 2d m., etc., are applied to stars, to designate first magnitude, second magnitude, etc.
II.—E., W., N., S., N. E., S. E., N. W., S. W., are used to designate the various points of the compass.
III.—Z. C. These letters are affixed to all Constellations of the Zodiac.

ANDROMEDA. This constellation is best learned after Pegasus. The N. E. star in the figure called the Great Square of Pegasus, belongs to Andromeda. This and two other 2d m. stars extend N. E. from Pegasus, in a line not quite straight. There are, also, two 3d m. stars on the map. The Great Nebula of Andromeda is one of the most remarkable in the heavens.

ARIES. Z. C. Aries is best learned after Andromeda, Pisces, or Taurus. There is a small irregular triangle, containing one 2d m., two 3d m. stars. This must not be confused with another triangle, which is the constellation Triangula. Triangula is a slender, nearly isosceles triangle, which contains no 2d m. star. Both are S. E. from Andromeda. All other stars of Aries, except the three in the triangle, are very faint. The ecliptic runs a little more than 8° south of the triangle, which, therefore, is not in the Zodiac, though part of the constellation is there. No star visible to the unaided eye marks the ecliptic.

AQUARIUS. Z. C. The Water-Bearer. Also, Fomalhaut of Piscis Australis. Aquarius contains a small Y, formed of 4th m. stars, which is quite distinct and easy to find, since it is not far S. W. from the Great Square of Pegasus. There is also a figure which, in shape, resembles somewhat the continent of South America. S. A. has 3d m. stars at the angles, but the others are faint. There is risk of getting students to call it South America, by which name it is of course not known to astronomers; but when attention is called to the resemblance, it makes the constellation much easier to find. A line from the little Y, through S. A., reaches the 1st m. star, Fomalhaut, in the eye of the Southern Fish. Fomalhaut is farther south than any other 1st m. star except Canopus, which is not seen north of Tennessee. To the east of S. A. there are a number of small stars in little clusters of twos and threes. Aquarius is a man pouring water from a cup. The little Y is on the cup, and the water is pouring from it. The little clusters of twos and threes are in the stream, and so are Fomalhaut and the Fish. The ecliptic crosses S. A., and

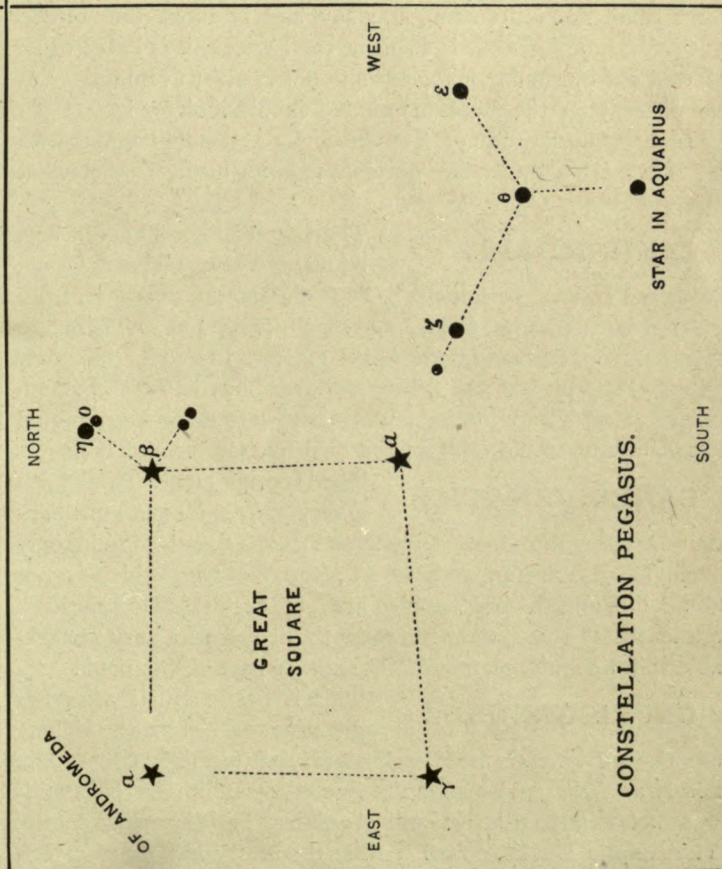
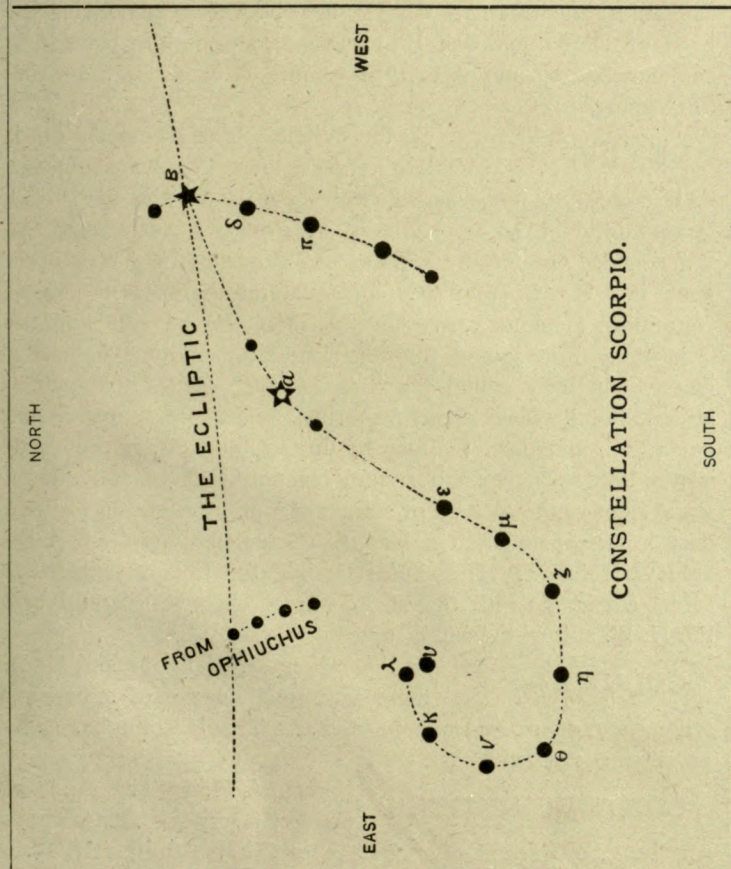
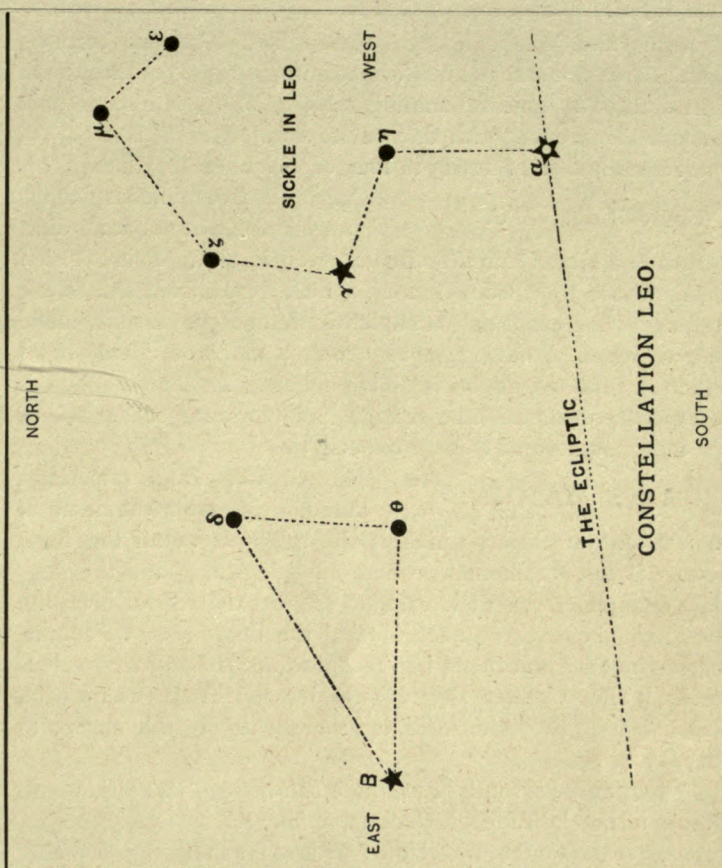
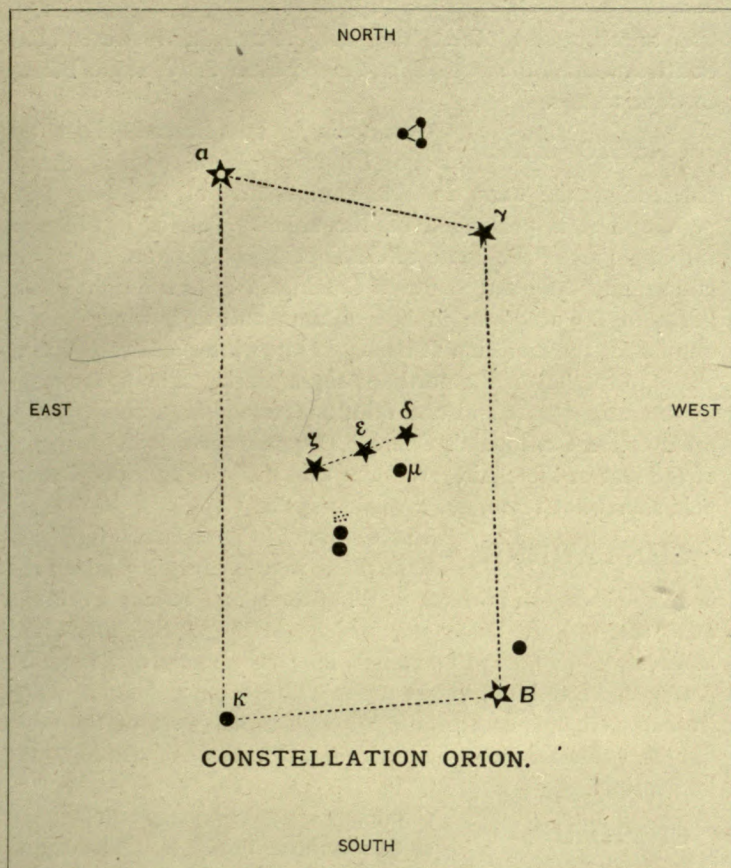
east of S. A. are two 4th m. stars joined together by a line on the map, which mark its course. The two southwest stars in S. A. belong to the constellation Capricornus. This should be impressed upon students after they find S. A. It is almost impossible to have Aquarius learned without using the distinguishable figure S. A., and with care there will be no confusion. The author has taught Aquarius to many children aged twelve, and always without going out with them at night.

AQUILA, or the Eagle. Aquila is easily distinguished by three stars in a short line, lying nearly across the Milky-Way. One is the 1st m. star Altair. Aquila comes in summer, when the brightest part of the Milky-Way is visible. The figure of A. on the map contains 3d M. stars, and is easily recognized. It lies in the Milky-Way, nearly overhead when on the meridian. One of the stars, Eta, is on the equinoctial. A. can be learned by its position in the Milky-Way, without knowing any adjacent constellation; or A. may be learned after Sagittarius. Altair can also be known by being the brightest star of the Milky-Way as seen in summer.

AURIGA, or the Wagoner. This can be learned after Orion, Perseus, or Gemini. It is very conspicuous, and easily found. It is an irregular five-sided figure, containing one 1st m. star, Capella, and two 2d m. stars. There is a small, slender triangle, called "The Kids," which is easy to find.

ARGO NAVIS. The Ship Argo. This may be learned after Canis Major, from which it is S. E. There are a number of bright stars on the southern horizon, but they are not combined into any figure on the map. They are easily found. One 2d m. star, Naos, is clearly seen; and in the Southern States, another 2d m. can be recognized on clear nights.

BOÖTES. Boötes can be easily found after the Great Dipper is known, from which it is S. E. In early spring, when the Great Dipper is in the east, a brilliant 1st m. star can be seen in the northeast, long before the whole constellation Boötes can be found. This star is



Arcturus, and in looking for Boötes it is best to find Arcturus first. Three stars are in line with Arcturus, and two of these, with others, form a figure resembling a kite. There is also a small triangle S. W. of A., with one 3d m. star. Also, S. E. from A., there are three stars nearly in line, of which one is 3d m.

CANCER. Z. C.

Cancer is a very inconspicuous constellation, but not at all difficult to find after Gemini or Leo are well known. It is between them, a little S. E. from Gemini, a little N. E. from the Sickle in Leo. There is a small triangle of 4th and 5th m. stars, made more evident by having in its center a patch of cloudy light, which is Præsepe, or the Bee-hive nebula. In the telescope, it is a cluster of stars. The triangle is important, because one of the most southern stars is on the ecliptic.

CANIS MAJOR.

The Greater Dog, sometimes called Sirius, from the name of its 1st m. star Sirius, which is the brightest of all the fixed stars. Sirius is sometimes called the "dog-star," and the dog-days of summer owe their name to the fact that Sirius is on the meridian above us at noon, during the dog-days. Of course, we can not see him there, but his position is known by calculation. The Greater Dog is best learned after Orion, from which it is S. E. After drawing, there is no possible chance to mistake it.

When Sirius is south of us, there can be seen in Florida, and States in the latitude of Georgia, a fine 1st m. star, Canopus, just above the southern horizon. It is so far south that it makes but a small arc in crossing the sky, and is above the horizon but a few hours. As it is so near the horizon, it is liable to be blotted out by smoke or fog except on very clear evenings. But the observer in the States mentioned should look for it. It can be seen in the latitude of Tennessee by a person familiar with it; but it is very near the horizon, and its luster is somewhat obscured.

CANIS MINOR.

The Lesser Dog. This can best be learned after Gemini, Orion, or Leo. It is S. or a little S. E. from Gemini, nearly E. from the northern part of Orion, and S. W. from Leo. There are two stars on the map; one a 1st m. star, Procyon, the other 3d m. Procyon and the 3d m. star are about as far from each other as Castor and Pollux, and, if they were more nearly equal in magnitude, would look a good deal like Castor and Pollux.

CANES VENATICI.

The Hunting Dogs. These form a very inconspicuous constellation between the Great Dipper and Boötes, and contain only a single 3d m. star midway between the two, which is not at all difficult to find. They are put in this "Description" because the constellation shows in the telescope a very remarkable spiral nebula, mentioned in another part of this book.

CAPRICORNUS. Z. C.

This is best learned after Sagittarius or Aquarius. There are two 3d m. stars near each other, and forming a short line nearly at right angles with the line of the ecliptic. It is midway between Sagittarius and Aquarius, and is easily found. The ecliptic is a little farther from the most southern star than

they are from each other. In the figure in Aquarius resembling South America, the two 3d m. stars in the S. W. angle belong to Capricornus.

CASSIOPEIA.

Cassiopeia is best learned after the two Dippers. If a line is drawn connecting the stars in the handle-ends of the two Dippers, and it is prolonged on the side of Polaris, it will pass through part of the figure of Cassiopeia, given on our map. In late summer and early autumn Cassiopeia is to the right of the northern sky at dark; in late autumn and early winter she is on or near the meridian at dark; in late winter and early spring she is to the left of the northern sky at dark. The figure made by the bright stars and one faint one resembles a chair, and is often called Cassiopeia's Chair. The faint star is in the front of the seat of the chair. Without this star, the figure of Cassiopeia somewhat resembles a very irregular W.

CENTAURUS.

The Centaur. Centaurus is only partially seen in the United States, and is on the southern horizon, S. W. of Scorpio. Its most brilliant stars (1st m.) are below the horizon in the U. S. There are, however, some fine 3d m. stars. There is a figure of a large Y; a very small and not bright triangle above it; a slender, nearly isosceles triangle east of the Y; and, to the west of the other figures, two stars near the horizon. Centaurus is visible in the late spring.

CEPHEUS.

Cepheus is an inconspicuous constellation near the pole. The figure resembles an irregular K. It lies between Cassiopeia, the head of Draco, and the Little Dipper, and is best learned in summer, late spring, or early autumn. It is N. of the Cross in Cygnus.

CETUS,

or the Whale. This constellation is best learned after Pegasus, Aquarius, and Pisces. It consists, as can be seen on the map, of a quadrilateral of 3d m. stars, E. of Aquarius, and easily distinguished. One of the stars of the quadrilateral has another near it. N. E. from this quadrilateral there is a triangle containing a 2d m. star. On the map, the triangle and the quadrilateral are joined, forming a figure resembling the mantis insect, popularly called the "devil-horse." E. of the quadrilateral, and between it and Aquarius, are two stars, one 2d m., one 3d m., joined on the map by dotted lines. E. of the quadrilateral there is a small square composed of 3d and 4th m. stars, from which a chain or stream of stars runs south, forming part of the constellation Eridanus. Cetus contains the remarkable variable star Mira, but it is half the time invisible. It forms a triangle with the N. E. star of the quadrilateral and the N. W. star of the small square.

COLUMBA,

or the Dove. S. of Lepus and Orion there is a small cluster of stars containing one 2d m. and one 3d m. star. This is Columba. The 2d m. star is called Phaet.

COMA BERENICES.

Berenice's Hair. This is a large cluster of very small stars which can best be learned after Boötes or Virgo. It lies N. from

Virgo, and W. from Boötes. It lies directly S. from the Great Dipper, but can be seen only when the Dipper is above the pole.

CORVUS.

The Crow. The Crow is standing on the Water-Serpent, Hydra, and is best learned with it. It is an irregular quadrilateral, and the star at two of the angles has another near it. It is very easily distinguished, and is just S. of Virgo. The solstitial colure passes near it.

CORONA BOREALIS.

The Northern Crown. This constellation is best learned after Boötes, from which it is E.; or Ophiuchus, from which it is W. It is easily distinguished by a figure resembling a semicircle, and by the 2d m. star Gemma.

CYGNUS,

or the Swan. Cygnus is visible in summer and autumn, and is easily found, because it is in the part of the Milky-Way then visible. It may also be learned after Pegasus, Hercules, or Aquila. It is in the part of the Milky-Way N. E. from Aquila. The figure of a cross is so evident that it is easily identified. The upper or northern part of the cross is composed of bright stars, and the arms are in a line across the Milky-Way. The star at top of the cross, Deneb, is a very bright 2d m. star. The upper part of the cross should be found first.

DELPHINUS,

or the Dolphin. Delphinus may be learned after Cygnus, from which it is S. E.; or after Aquila, from which it is N. E.; or after Pegasus, from which it is nearly W. It is easily distinguished in summer and autumn, because it is very near the middle point of the part of the Milky-Way then above the horizon, and on its eastern side. It consists of a small diamond-shaped figure, with another star. All except one of these stars are 3d m. The diamond or lozenge figure is popularly called Job's Coffin.

DRACO,

or the Dragon. Draco can best be learned in late spring, summer, or early autumn. It should be learned after the student knows the Dippers and the 1st m. star Vega in Lyra. The two Dippers should be drawn first, and Draco added afterward. In looking for it, the student should be directed to look first for the head. A straight line from Vega to the bowl of the Little Dipper passes through the head of Draco. It is a very small, irregular quadrilateral, containing two 2d m. stars which can not fail to be recognized. The two other stars of the quadrilateral are fainter. One is 3d m., one 4th m. After finding the head, the student must look for the tail. A chain of stars forming it surrounds the Little Dipper, passing between it and the Great Dipper; and, after making more than half the circuit, it makes a turn back to join the head. One of these stars is of interest, because the pole of the heavens was once very near it. It is called α of Draco, and it lies in a straight line between ζ , a star in the bend of the handle of the Great Dipper, and γ , one of the two stars called "Guardians of the Pole," which lies in the bottom of the bowl of the Little Dipper.

ERIDANUS,

or the River Po. This constellation lies between Cetus and Orion. There are two irregular chains of stars, of which one extends from the

triangle in Cetus to Rigel in Orion (a 1st m. star). It contains a 2d m. star. The other chain runs from the little square in Cetus to the southern horizon.

GEMINI, Z. C.,

or the Twins. This is best learned after Orion or Leo. The two brightest stars are called Castor and Pollux. Pollux is called 1st m., Castor 2d m., but it takes close observation to see any difference. There are three stars in Gemini lying nearly on the ecliptic, and one of these, the extreme western star of the map, is a little E. of the point where the sun is situated on June 22d. The point is called the Summer Solstice. The student should mark this point S. S., in drawing the constellation.

HERCULES.

Hercules is best learned after Boötes Ophiuchus, or Draco. After drawing Hercules and Ophiuchus separately, and finding them, they should be drawn together, because the figures run together. Hercules contains no stars brighter than 3d m. The solstitial colure runs just E. of Hercules.

HYDRA.

The Water-Snake. Hydra is best found in April or May, after Virgo, Leo, Cancer, and Libra are known, for it lies S. of them all. It is a long constellation, extending N. W. and S. E. It is best to find the head first. That lies just S. of Cancer, and, though composed only of 4th and 5th m. stars, is perfectly distinct and easily found. It looks a good deal like the nodding bud of a fuchsia-blossom. After learning the head, the student will do well to find the 2d m. star, Al Fard, or Cor Hydra, which is S. of Leo. Then he finds Corvus, a separate constellation (see CORVUS), S. of Virgo, but one which should be drawn with Hydra. W. of Corvus, three 3d m. stars extend in an almost E.-W. line toward Libra. Between Corvus and Cor Hydra there are a good many very small stars, but it is not important to distinguish them; and it is well to let the student represent them in his drawing by a few flourishes. Part of them constitute a separate constellation, called Crater, or the Cup, which is on Hydra; but it is unimportant. The triangle N. E. of Cor Hydra should be found. The equinoctial crosses this constellation north of this triangle and Cor Hydra.

LEO MAJOR.* Z. C.

The Greater Lion. Leo can be found in spring without knowing any other constellation than the Great Dipper, from which it is S. W. The fine 1st m. star Regulus will be easily recognized. It is not very near the Dipper, but no other 1st m. star comes between the two. Regulus is in the handle-end of the Sickle, which the student is supposed to have drawn when he looks for Regulus. There is another figure, a right triangle, belonging to Leo, lying W. of the Sickle, and containing a 2d m. star, Denebola. Regulus is nearly on the ecliptic, the only 1st m. star which marks it. Leo can, of course, be easily learned after Cancer, Gemini, or Virgo, if they are already found. It is between Cancer and Virgo, between Gemini and Virgo. (See page 81.)

LEO MINOR.

The Lesser Lion. This is a very inconspicuous constellation. One 3d m. star

* This constellation is usually called simply Leo.

can be found by the student between Leo Major and the Great Dipper. This is the only bright star in Leo Minor.

LEPUS.

The Hare. This can be found after Orion, from which it lies directly S. There are two figures on the map. Nearest Orion there is a row of three stars; and S. of that, an irregular figure like a woman's hanging sleeve.

LIBRA, Z. C., or the Balances. This can be found after Virgo or Scorpio, as it lies between them. There is a somewhat irregular quadrilateral with two 2d m. stars; the others are 4th m. The ecliptic passes nearly through the most southern of the 2d m. stars, and between the two 4th m. One of the two 2d m. stars marking the ecliptic is in Libra; the other is in Scorpio.

LYRA.

The Harp. In late spring a fine 1st m. star of a bluish appearance is seen in the N. E. This is Vega in Lyra. Lyra can be found after Hercules or Cygnus. It is E. of Hercules, W. of Cygnus, and lies not far from the western border of the Milky-Way. Two 4th m. stars very near it form a very small, nearly isosceles, triangle. One of these, which young eyes can see is double, is ϵ Lyrae, the double star mentioned in the last chapter of this book. There are two 3d m. stars a little farther off. The constellation is very small.

MUSCA.

The Fly. This is a very small group containing one 3d m. star. It lies S. of Algol, in Perseus; S. E. from Triangula; N. E. from Aries.

NAVIS.

See ARGO.

OPHIUCHUS,

or Serpentarius. The Serpent-Bearer. This is usually divided into two constellations, viz., Ophiuchus and Serpens. They are here treated as one. Ophiuchus is best learned after Hercules, or Boötes and Corona, Aquila or Scorpio. It is a very large constellation, and contains four 2d m. stars. It is just W. of the Milky-Way, which aids to find it. The most western stars run between the divided part of the Milky-Way. Hercules and Ophiuchus run so into each other that it is difficult to separate them into two figures; and, after drawing each separately, they should be drawn on the same paper.

ORION.

This is the most brilliant constellation in the heavens. It can be found after knowing Gemini, Sirius, or Taurus; or it can easily be found, without any other guide than its own conspicuous figure, as soon as the student can draw it from memory. In the early winter it is seen in the E. at dark; it passes the meridian at dark about the close of February and the beginning of March; and after that it is seen in the W. until late in spring. When it passes the meridian, it must be looked for a good deal S. of the observer. There are two 1st m. stars, Rigel and Betelgeuse. Betelgeuse is farther N. than Rigel, and reddish. Another of the four stars forming the quadrilateral is 2d m. This is called Bellatrix. Within the quadrilateral are found three 2d m. stars in a line running S. E. and N. W. They are said to be in the belt of Orion. There runs a line of stars S. from these which

are said to be in the sword-handle. One of these looks hazy. It is the nebulous star mentioned in Chapter XI. The small triangle which lies in the N. of the quadrilateral is said to be in the neck of Orion. (See page 81.)

PEGASUS.

Pegasus can be learned after Aquarius, Cygnus, or Andromeda; or it can easily be recognized by its own conspicuous figure, if the observer has drawn it. Four 2d m. stars form a large square, not exactly regular, called the Great Square of Pegasus; and to the N. W. angle is attached a triangle of smaller stars, which aids in identifying it. The N. E. star of the Great Square really belongs to Andromeda, but helps to complete the Great Square. In September Pegasus is seen in the E. at dark; it passes the meridian at dark in early winter, when it is nearly overhead; and after that it is seen in the W. at dark until March. S. W. from the Square there is another figure which the student must learn by drawing it, after he knows the Square. (See page 81.)

PERSEUS

and Medusa's Head. This is very easily learned after Cassiopeia, Auriga, or Taurus. It lies in the Milky-Way. Part of Perseus is a portion of a circle called the Segment of Perseus. Its concave side turns N. E. Besides this a curved branch runs S. W., and, at the end of the branch, two stars make a sudden bend. E. of this curve there are two stars, one a not very bright 2d m. The two are near each other, and the 2d m. star is the remarkable variable star Algol, or Beta Persei. An account of it is given in Chapter XI. There is a 2d m. star in the Segment of Perseus called Algenib. It is at the junction of the segment and branch.

PISCES. Z. C.

The Fishes. This constellation is best learned after Pegasus, Aquarius, and Andromeda. Only one star is as bright as 3d m.; but, with a little care, the constellation is easily found, as it is not indistinct. The student must find first a small hexagon, not quite regular, of 4th and 5th m. stars, not indistinct. From the hexagon a chain of faint stars runs nearly E. and W., terminating in a 3d m. star. From this another chain runs nearly N., and just S. of Andromeda it meets a cluster of faint stars. This last cluster is the Northern Fish, or Piscis Borealis. The hexagon is the Western Fish, or Piscis Occidentalis. The two most southern stars of the hexagon are nearly on the equinoctial, and a very little E. of them is the point where the sun is found at the Vernal Equinox on March 21st. If a line were drawn S. through the two eastern stars of the Square, it would be a little E. of the Vernal Equinox. On the maps of Pisces made by students, the point should be marked V. E. There are three 4th m. stars in the chain running E. from the Western Fish. The ecliptic runs just S. of them, and crosses the chain or ribbon, as it is sometimes called, just W. of them. The chain connected with the Northern Fish has in it one 4th m. star, and farther S. two 5th m. stars. Between the two 5th m. stars the ecliptic crosses that chain. The 3d m. star joining the chains is a very little N. of the equinoctial.

PISCIS AUSTRALIS.

The Southern Fish. This has already been described in Aquarius.

SAGITTARIUS. Z. C. The Archer. This constellation is seen in summer and autumn, and, when Scorpio is known, it can be found from it; but it is also very easily distinguished, because it is at the southern and brightest part of the Milky-Way. First a small figure must be found, like a dipper turned upside down. This is called the "Milk-Dipper." S. W. of this, and just in the Milky-Way, is a small right triangle containing a 2d m. star. N. E. from the Dipper there is an irregular cluster of very small stars, not bright, but important, because the ecliptic passes through them. Nearly N. from the right triangle is the point where the sun is found on December 22d, at the winter solstice. The point should be marked on the maps of students.

SCORPIO. Z. C. The Scorpion. This constellation can be found in the S. on any clear summer evening, first by the brilliant 1st m. star Antares; and next by its peculiar shape, outlined by many 3d m. stars. Antares is very red, and nearer the southern horizon than any 1st m. star seen in summer, so there is no possible chance to mistake it. There is also a 2d m. star, and the ecliptic passes nearly through it. This is one of two 2d m. stars which mark the course of the ecliptic. The other is in Libra, just W. of Scorpio. If the student knows Libra, Sagittarius, or Ophiuchus, Scorpio can be learned from them. Scorpio is E. of Libra, W. of Sagittarius, S. of Ophiuchus. After drawing, it is impossible not to recognize it, though it is so near the horizon that the tail is often a little obscured through smoke. N. of the tail there are four small stars in line, and the most northern is nearly on the ecliptic. These stars really belong to the constellation Ophiuchus, but are mentioned here because they aid us in tracing the ecliptic. (See page 81.)

TAURUS. Z. C. The Bull. Taurus can be learned after Orion, Auriga, Gemini, or Aries. It is N. of Orion, W. or S. W. of Gemini, S. W. of Auriga, E. or N. E. of Aries. There is a cluster of small stars popularly known as the "Seven Stars." They are all small, but united they become conspicuous. These are the Pleiades. S. E. from the Pleiades there is a figure like the letter V containing a reddish 1st m. star, Aldebaran. The V is called the Hyades. If a line be supposed to join the Pleiades and the Hyades, a small group of four 5th m. stars in a line will be just E. of it. The most southern one of these is nearly on the ecliptic, which runs between the Pleiades and Hyades.

NOTE ON ART. 154.—We do not actually see Venus at her conjunctions, but, if we could see sun and planet at once, we should see her on or near the horizon. The observer at the sun would see her on our celestial horizon.

A careful observer of Venus is almost sure to notice that as evening star she rises more slowly from the horizon than she descends. As morning star the reverse is true. The reason is as follows: Since the earth's annual revolution makes the stars seem to rise in the east and set in the west, it must move our horizon down in the east and up in the west. When Venus is evening star, this constantly lessens her distance from the horizon, and thus her rise is retarded, her descent hastened. When she is morning star, the

TRIANGULA. The Triangle. This can best be learned after Andromeda and Perseus. It is a slender, nearly isosceles, triangle, lying between Perseus, Andromeda, Pisces, and Aries. It must not be mistaken for the triangle in Aries, which contains a 2d m. star, and is nearly S. from it. The triangle in Aries is not isosceles.

URSA MAJOR. The Great Bear. The map gives two figures for Ursa Major, viz., the Great Dipper, and a row of stars in twos S. W. from the Dipper. The Dipper is sufficiently described in Chapter I. The names of the stars of the Dipper, given in order, beginning with the handle-end, are Benetnasch, Alcor, Alioth, Megres (joining bowl and handle), Phad, Merach (the last two in the bottom of the bowl), and Dubbhe. It is not desirable to try to make students learn these, unless they study for a long time. There will inevitably be confusion among so many names. The row of stars in the feet is not well seen except in spring and summer. It is not desirable to teach it when the Dipper is first learned. After the more important constellations are learned there can be a review, if there is time, and this figure can be learned. These stars are in the feet of the Great Bear.

URSA MINOR. The Lesser Bear. This contains but one important figure, the Little Dipper, and that is fully described in Chapter I. Polaris is 2d m.; the Guardians are 3d m.

VIRGO. Z. C. The Virgin. This can best be learned after Leo, Libra, or Boötes. It is nearly E. (a little S. E.) from Leo, nearly W. (a little N. W.) from Libra, and it is S. W. from Boötes. The 1st m. star Spica helps to identify it. After drawing, the figure is very easily identified. There is a figure resembling somewhat a chair turned back, only the seat of the chair projects too much. The stars of the figure are 3d m., except Spica and a faint 4th m., through which the ecliptic passes and gives it importance. There is another faint 5th m. star in Virgo (but not in this figure) through which the ecliptic passes. It is, on the map, between the figure and Libra. This star is said to be in the feet of the Virgin. The ecliptic passes just S. of three of the 3d m. stars, which therefore mark its course. The point where the ecliptic crosses the equinoctial is the point where the sun is found September 21st. This is therefore the point of the Autumnal Equinox, and it should be marked in all copies of this map of Virgo, A. E.

effect is reversed. The more rapid rise of Venus as morning star gives some advantages to the morning study.

NOTE ON ART. 97.—The difference between a synodical and a sidereal revolution of the moon can perhaps best be seen by watching her motion from full to full. When she returns to full, we find that she has traveled round the zodiac, or 360°, and has also passed through one zodiacal constellation twice. When she has passed once round the zodiac, she has made a sidereal revolution; when she returns to full, she has completed a synodical revolution.

APPENDIX B.

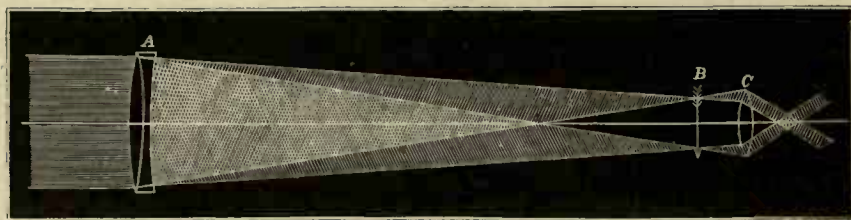
THE TELESCOPE.

(Taken chiefly from Lockyer's "Astronomy.")

Construction.—The telescope is a combination of lenses. The principle involved in its construction is simply an extension

nating power is good and a perfect image is formed, a high magnifying power is useless. If the object-glass does not perform its part properly, the image will be blurred.

FIG. 108.



Construction of the Astronomical Telescope.

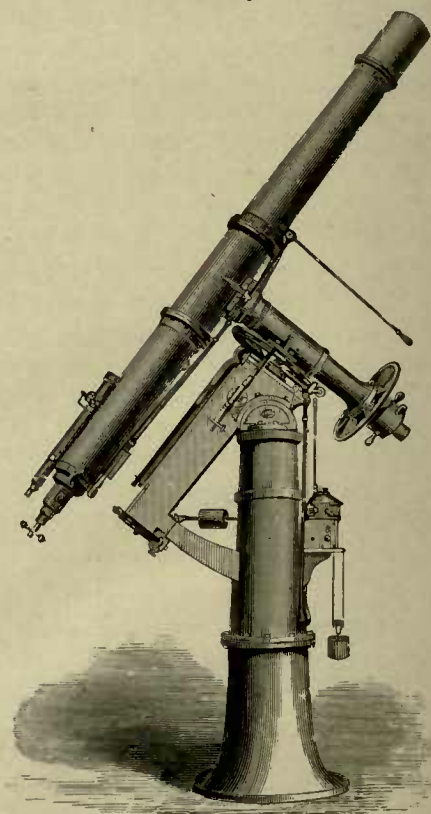
of that exhibited in the structure of the eye. In the eye nearly parallel rays fall on a lens, and this lens throws an image. In the telescope nearly parallel rays fall on a biconvex lens; this lens throws an image, and then another lens enables the eye to form an image of the image by rendering the rays again parallel. These parallel rays enter the eye just as they do in ordinary vision. In Fig. 108, for instance, let A represent the front lens, called the *object-glass*, because it is nearest to the object viewed; let C represent the other, called the *eye-piece*, because it is nearest the eye; and let B represent the image of a distant arrow, the rays from which are seen falling on the object-glass from the left. These rays are refracted, and we get an inverted image at the focus of the object-glass, which is also the focus of the eye-piece. The rays leave the eye-piece adapted for vision as they are when they fall on the object-glass; the eye can therefore use them as well as if no telescope had been there.

The efficiency of the telescope depends on two things—its illuminating power and its magnifying power. First, as to its illuminating power. The object-glass, being larger than the pupil of our eye, receives more rays than the pupil. If its surface be a thousand times greater than that of the pupil, for instance, it receives a thousand times more light; and, consequently, the image of a star formed at its focus is nearly a thousand times brighter than that thrown by the lens of our eye on the retina.

The magnifying power depends on two things: first, it depends on the focal length of the object-glass; next, the magnifying power of the eye-piece is to be taken into account. This varies according to the eye-piece used, the ratio of the focal length of the object-glass to the eye-piece giving its exact amount. Thus, if the focal length of the object-glass is one hundred inches and that of the eye-piece one inch, the telescope will magnify one hundred times. But, unless the illumi-

heavenly bodies, the only essential is that the instrument should be so arranged as to command every portion of the sky. The best mounting for this purpose is shown in Fig. 109. With such an instrument, called an equatorial, a heavenly body may be followed from its rising to its setting, the proper motion being communicated by machinery. In this arrangement there is a strong iron pillar supporting a head-piece, in which is fixed the polar axis of the instrument parallel to the axis of the earth. This polar axis is made to turn round once in twenty-four hours. The machinery turns the telescope in one direction just as fast as the earth moves in the other, and thus the instrument is kept all the times fixed on a heavenly body. It is inconvenient to fix the telescope on the polar axis, as its range is then limited; it is fixed, therefore, to an axis at right angles to the polar axis.

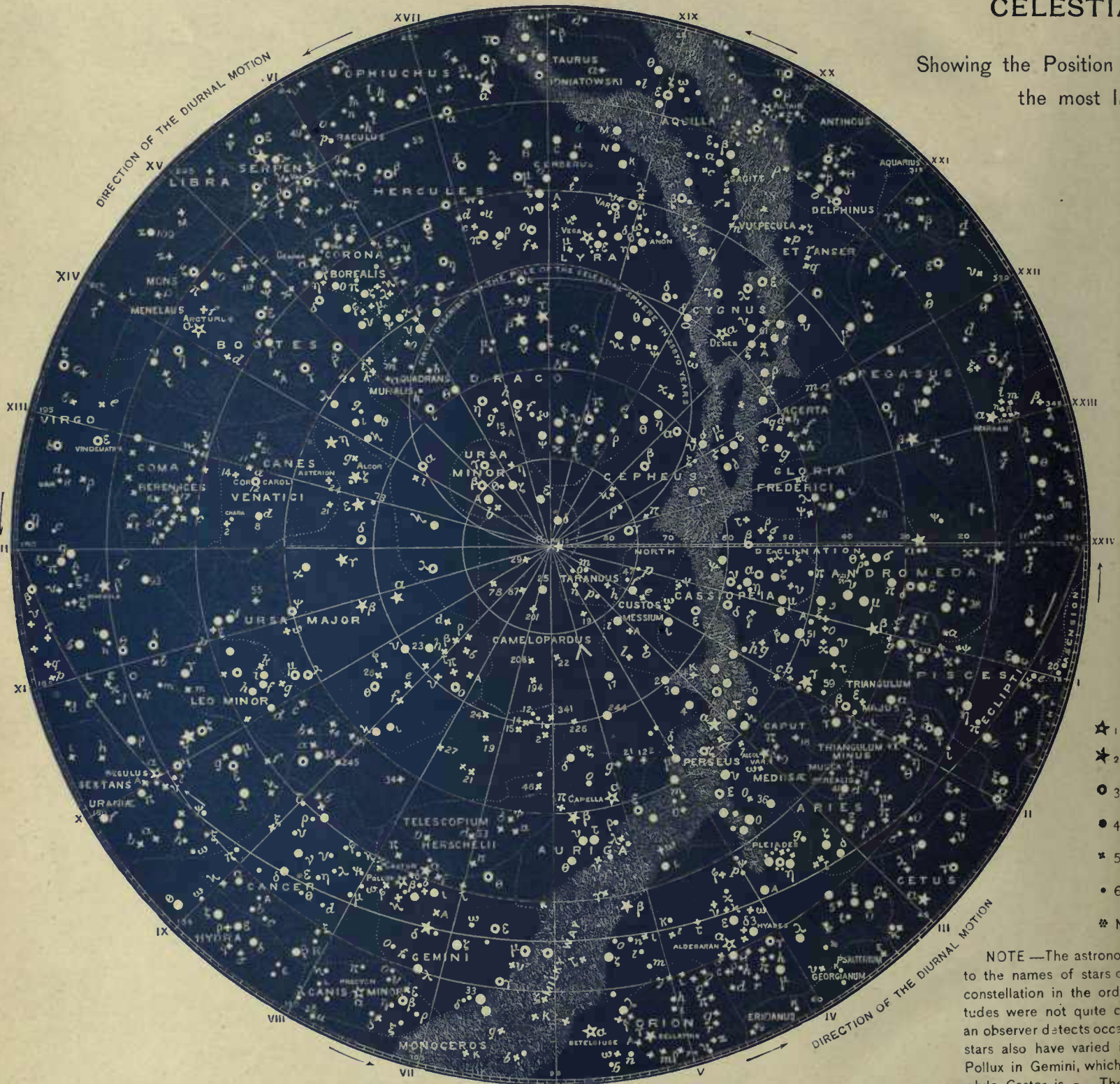
FIG. 109.



NORTHERN HEMISPHERE

CELESTIAL

Showing the Position of
the most Important Stars

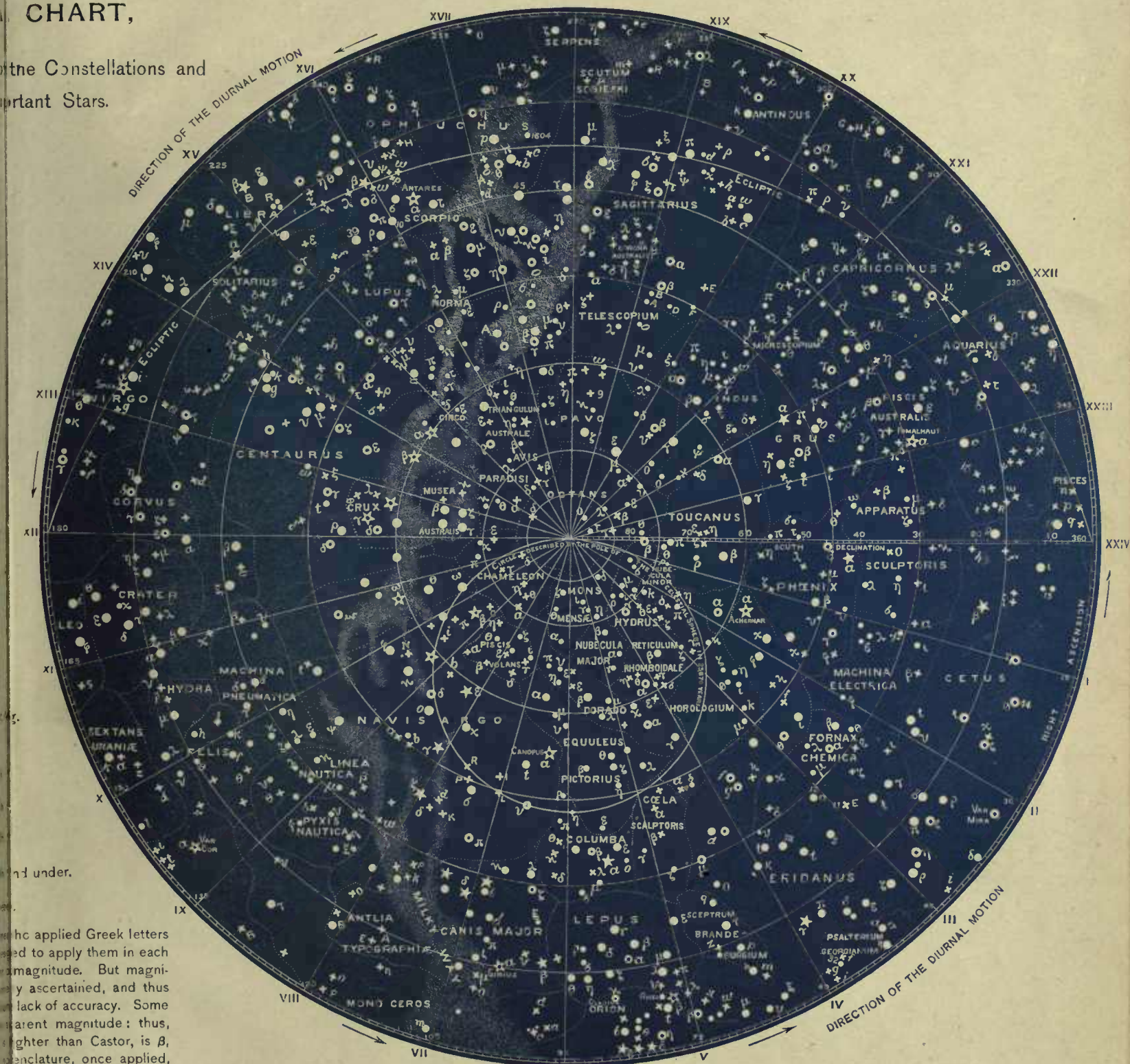


NOTE —The astronomical names of stars and constellations were not quite correct at the time of the map's creation, and an observer detects occasional stars also have varied in position. For example, Pollux in Gemini, which is a 2nd magnitude star, while Castor is a 2nd magnitude star. The names can not easily be changed.

CHART,

of the Constellations and
Important Stars.

SOUTHERN HEMISPHERE



APPENDIX C.

OBSERVATION OF METEORS AND COMETS.

MR. E. E. BARNARD, of Vanderbilt Observatory, Nashville, Tennessee, a well-known observer of comets, gave to the author's pupils some simple directions for observation of meteors and comets, without instruments. They are of wider use, so the substance of them is here given.

Meteors.—On any evening when you see them, note carefully at what point among the stars each appears, at what point it disappears. Trace these paths, as you learn each, on a chart or globe of the heavens. If you are fortunate enough to see a number, you will find that some of the paths intersect. The point of intersection is the radiant, and you will have seen a shower. If you become an accurate observer, some of the periodicals devoted to the stars may be glad to publish your report. The record should be about as follows: 1st m. meteor, appeared $2\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ N., 3° W. of Vega; disappeared 4° due S. of Altair; time of flight, $1\frac{1}{2}$ second; color reddish, faint train, permanent for 5 seconds, exploded with several red sparks. To such a report is added the date, the mean time, and the exact location of the observer. Any change of color in the meteor during flight, or at the time of bursting, should be noticed and recorded. If the student chances to see a large meteor, there is a special value in his report, for the same object may be seen in some other place, and the two observations will enable astronomers interested in the study of meteors to tell all about it.

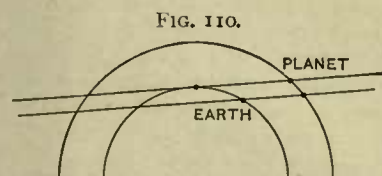
To this, the author adds a few words in regard to the observation of the Leonids, or November meteors. If the observer sees at once the trains of a number of meteors, the radiant point or intersection is evident without tracing on a map. On November 14th, the constellation Leo is on the eastern horizon at midnight, and the sun, of course, is on the meridian below the horizon. A line drawn from the observer to the sun, and another to the point where the ecliptic and eastern horizon intersect in Leo, would, it is evident, make a right angle. At midnight, the ellipse which is the earth's orbit is below us,

except the point we are on (for the orbit must always lie on the same side of us as the sun). Thus it is plain that the line to the eastern horizon is a tangent to the earth's orbit.

Now, the student must remember that the earth's motion, like that of a key revolved by the hand on a string, would at any moment carry it in the direction of a tangent to its orbit but for the attraction at the sun holding it fast and continually bending the straight line into a curve or ellipse. Therefore, at midnight, November 14th, the earth is moving directly toward Leo, and the meteors are coming from the quarter toward which the earth is moving at that time. As we only see them on or near November 14th, it is evident that the paths of the earth and the meteors are not identical, but intersecting paths. As they come to meet us, their motion is retrograde, or from east to west. When the earth's rotation on her axis makes Leo appear to move west, the radiant point seems to move with it.

Comets.—In order to observe a comet with intelligence, the comet's position among the stars must be noted, and also the position of the sun at the time. Then it is easy for the observer to note its motion toward and from the sun, and the changes it undergoes in approaching and receding from him, especially the changes in its tail. Its path in regard to the ecliptic should be noted, as we thus gain some idea of the plane in which it moves. Mr. Barnard says, "In the case of a large comet, naked-eye observations may be worth recording. The time of the observation should be given to the nearest minute. The limits and general position of the tail should be carefully sketched, and that of the head, with notes as to curvature of tail, brightest parts, etc. Any markings on the tail, such as dark streaks, etc., should be carefully traced. Such work, done accurately, will be valuable work. Above all things, students should be taught to be very careful, and *have no uncertainties without fully stating them.*"

NOTE ON ART. 139.—A student observing the retrograde movement carefully in nature would be almost sure to notice that at the end (and also at the beginning) of this movement



at the beginning) of this movement a planet seems to cease moving among the stars altogether. The almanac notes the times by an entry such as " δ stationary," or " δ stat'y." The explanation is simple. If a diagram is made showing the positions in their orbits,

of the earth and planet at the beginning and end of the stationary period, it is found that all lines running through the centers of the earth and a planet while it is stationary are parallels. (See Fig. 110.) It has been shown (Arts. 44, 45) that all parallels passing through any points of the earth's orbit appear to converge to a point upon the celestial sphere. When

a planet crosses such parallels, it is all the time seen against the same point of the sphere, and so appears to have stopped moving.

NOTE ON ART. 212.—The relation of a great planet to such a "comet-family" is expressed by saying that the planet's attraction has captured the comets. The probable history of the Lexell-Brooks comet, lately traced back in connection with that of Jupiter, confirms the "capture theory." Lexell's comet, which had a period of five years and a half, was seen in 1770. It went finally beyond observation after being near Jupiter, and there is some evidence that it was changed to a twenty-seven-year comet with a new elliptical orbit, which would bring it again near Jupiter in 1886, where its orbit might again be changed. Now, a seven-year comet, discovered by Brooks in 1889, can be traced back to this neighborhood in 1886; and this leads to the belief that it is the transformed Lexell comet. The orbits of such comets were probably at first parabolas, but were changed to ellipses by planetary attraction.

INDEX.

(The numbers refer to articles, not to pages.)

NOTE.—In making this index, the author designed that it should both answer the object of an index and serve as a list of topics for review. The order in which it is wise to treat a subject for beginners, necessarily separates subjects with some connections. It is nearly always best to review in a different order where it can conveniently be managed. It brings out relations which have been neglected, and excites the minds of students, to whom review is tiresome. The author, in teaching other books, has found a good index useful for review, and has employed this experience in making this index. Teachers who have never tried the plan of adopting a different order for review are recommended to make trial. Where the plan seems to make too much repetition, there may be omissions.

- Absorption of light, by vapors, 174; by the atmosphere of Mars, 198; by atmospheres of the fixed stars, 223.
- Aërolites, defined, 205; composition of, 206; meteoric iron and meteoric stones, 206; origin of, 207.
- Aldebaran, 1st m. star, 5; color and composition of, 223.
- Algol, or β Persei, variable star, 228.
- Alpha, or α Centauri, annual parallax and distance of, 224.
- Alphabet, Greek, 6.
- Altair, 1st m. star, 5; color and composition of, 223.
- Altitude. The angular distance of a heavenly body above the horizon, 19.
- Andromeda, nebula in, 232; new star in, note, page 80.
- Antares, 1st m. star, 5; color and composition of, 223.
- Aphelion. The point which is farthest from the sun on the orbit of a heavenly body revolving round the sun, 46.
- Apogee. The position of the sun or moon when at its greatest distance from the earth, 46.
- Apsides, line of. A line joining the perihelion and aphelion points of the earth's orbit. It is the major axis of an ellipse, 74.
- Aquarius, star-cluster in, 230.
- Ara, a southern circumpolar constellation, 235.
- Arctic and Antarctic circles, 62.
- Arcturus, 1st m. star, 5; motion of, 222; color and composition, 223.
- Aries, 1st point of, 79.
- Asteroids, minor planets, 188, 192, 193.
- Axis, celestial, 40.
- Azimuth. This is angular distance, measured horizontally, from the meridian. It is measured by the arc of the horizon intercepted between the meridian and a vertical circle passing through the body whose azimuth is sought, 19.
- Beta, or β Persei, variable star called Algol, 228.
- Betelgeuse, 1st m. star, 5; motion of, 222.
- Calendar. See "Time," 81-91.
- Cancer, Præsepe or Beehive Nebula in, 232.
- Canopus, 1st m. star in Centaurus, 5, 235.
- Capella, 1st m. star, 5; color and composition of, 223.
- Cassiopeia, described, 7; new star in, 229.
- Centaurus, cluster of stars in, 230.
- Ceres, an asteroid, 188.
- Cetus, variable star Mira in, 228.
- Circles. Great circles bisect each other, 52; diurnal circles, 18, 22; small circles, 52; circles of perpetual apparition and disparition, 21; equinoctial system of circles, 18, 49; horizon system, 19; ecliptic system, 48.
- Clusters of stars, 230.
- Colures. Great circles passing through the celestial poles and the equinoctial or solstitial points of the ecliptic, 49.
- Comets, description of, 209; the parts of comets, comets of Donati and Coggia, vaporous envelopes of comets, 210, 211; orbits and origin of comets, periodical comets, 212; return of comets, Halley's comet, effect of large planets on comets, 213; telescopic comets, Biela's comet, comet of 1843, 214; spectra of comets, comet of 1881, 215; numbers of the comets, Newton and the comet of 1680, comet of 1811, 216.
- Conjunction. A planet or the moon is in conjunction with the sun, when the sun and earth are in line with it, and the earth is not in the middle, 54, 127; superior and inferior conjunctions, 148.
- Constellation, a, defined, 2; for account of all the important constellations of the northern hemisphere, see Appendix A, page 84.
- Corona, the sun's, 185.
- Corona Borealis, new star in, 229.
- Day and night, unequal, 54-61; uses of word day, 83, note; sidereal and solar days, 26, 83; calendar days, 84.
- Declination. This is angular distance north or south from the equinoctial, 18.
- Deimos, moon of Mars, 198.
- Density, of sun, 169; of planets, 191.
- Disks, of fixed stars, 225.
- Distances, of sun from earth, 193; of planets from the sun, 193; comparative distances from the earth at opposition or conjunction of Mars, Jupiter, and Saturn, 127, 138; variation in a planet's distances from the earth, 127; distances of fixed stars from the earth, 41, 44, 224.
- Dorado (sword-fish), southern circumpolar constellation, 235.
- Earth, the, her diurnal rotation, 9, 10; plane and direction of diurnal motion, 11, 12; annual motion, 35, 36; inclination of axis, 39, 40; the earth and the ecliptic, 34, 47; the earth's orbit, 43, 46; the earth in aphelion and perihelion, 46; inequality of her days and nights, 54-62; her seasons, 62-72; inequalities of her annual motion, 72, 73; revolution of line of apsides, 75; revolution of equinoctial points and of the poles, 76, 77; her form, 189; diameter and volume, 190; density, 191; distance from the sun, 193.
- East and west, 12.
- Eclipses, observation and, 104; account of, 112-118; eclipses of moon, 114; of sun, 115; of Jupiter's moons, 199.
- Ecliptic, the. A great circle of the celestial sphere the plane of which passes through the centers of the earth and sun and intersects the plane of the equinoctial at an angle of $23\frac{1}{2}^\circ$. Ecliptic described, 32; sun's motion on it, 33, 47; relation to the equinoctial, 32; the ecliptic as seen at dark and the earth's annual motion, 42; aspects of the ecliptic, 50; proved a great circle, 52; how it is traced on the heavens, 53; the ecliptic and the moon's path, 99-102; the ecliptic and the moon's crescent, 105; harvest moon and the ecliptic, 108, 109; eclipses and ecliptic, 117; superior planets and ecliptic, 128, 139, 193; Venus and, 144, 150, 193; Mercury and, 155.
- Ecliptic system of circles, 48, 49.
- Elements, chemical, in the sun, 177; in fixed stars, 223; in meteors, 205, 206.
- Ellipses, 46, 192, 208, 212.
- Epsilon (or ϵ) Lyre, double star, 227.
- Equinoctial, the. A great circle of the celestial

- sphere perpendicular to its axis, 18 ; angle with ecliptic, 32.
 Equinoctial system of circles, 18.
 Equinoxes, vernal and autumnal, 49.
 Eta (or η) Argus, variable star, 228.
 Experiments illustrating the diurnal motion of the stars, 8 ; to investigate the earth's annual revolution, 38, 39, 44 ; to illustrate the inclination of the celestial axis, 40 ; to show the plane of the earth's motions, 40 ; to show the effect of oblique heat-rays, 67 ; to illustrate the precession of the equinoxes, 77 ; to illustrate the retrograde motions of superior planets, 135 ; to illustrate the motions of inferior planets, 147.
 Fixed stars. See Stars.
 Fomalhaut, 1st m. star, 5.
 Fraunhofer's lines. Name of the dark lines of the solar spectrum, taken from their discoverer, 174, 223.
 Galaxy, the, the Milky-Way, 6, 231.
 Globes, celestial, their uses, 17.
 Gravitation, attraction of, 160-163.
 Great Dipper, description of, 7 ; motion of the stars in, 221. See constellation Ursa Major in Appendix A.
 Gregorian Calendar, 87.
 Grus, the Crane, southern circumpolar constellation, 235.
 Guardians of the Pole, 7.
 Harvest moon, 109.
 Heat, obliquity of sun's rays and heat, 63, 68 ; the degree of the sun's heat, 171.
 Hemispheres. The meridian of every place divides the celestial sphere into eastern and western hemispheres. Their area constantly changes, 56. The equinoctial divides the celestial sphere into northern and southern hemispheres. Their area does not change. See maps v and vi.
 Horizon, celestial. This is a great circle of the celestial sphere of which every point is 90° from the zenith, 19, 45 ; the horizon and the poles, 20.
 Horizon system of circles, 19.
 Hour circles. These are great circles passing through the celestial poles and perpendicular to the equinoctial, 18.
 Hydrus, southern circumpolar constellation, 235.
 Inclination of the earth's axis, 39, 40.
 Inferior conjunction, 148.
 Inferior planets, 140, 188.
 Illumination of earth, 62.
 Juno, a minor planet, 188.
 Jupiter, superior and major planet—how to find him, 120-124 ; motions as superior planet, 124-140 ; his retrograde motion, 136 ; comparative distance from the earth at opposition, 127, 138 ; his form, 189 ; diameter and volume, 190 ; density, 191 ; orbit, 192, 193 ; distance from sun, 193 ; period of revolutions, 194 ; telescopic aspect and physical condition, moons, 199 ; Jupiter and comets, 212, 213.
 Kepler's laws, 159 ; his star, 229.
 Latitude, celestial, angular distance north or south from the ecliptic, 48, 80.
 Leonids, meteor train revolving round the sun, 208.
 Librations of the moon, 107.
 Light, of sun, 170 ; of fixed stars, 224.
 Little Dipper, 7. See Ursa Minor, in Appendix A ; page 89.
 Longitude, celestial. Angular distance measured on the ecliptic east from the first point of Aries, 48, 80.
 Magnitudes of fixed stars (comparative), 3, 5 ; (absolute), 225.
 Major planets, 186, 187.
 Mars, superior and major planet—how to find him, 120-124 ; motions as superior planet, 124-140 ; variation in apparent diameter and distance from the earth, 127 ; comparative distance from the earth at opposition, 138 ; retrograde movement, 136 ; orbit and parallax, 167 ; phases, note on page 47 ; form, 189 ; diameter and volume, 190 ; density, 191 ; orbit, 192, 193 ; plane of motion and distance from the sun, 193 ; period of revolutions, 194 ; telescopic appearance, physical condition, moons, 198.
 Measurement, celestial, 165.
 Mercury, inferior major planet—how to find him, 155 ; motions as inferior planet, 140-156 ; phases, 155 ; form, 189 ; volume and diameter, 190 ; density, 191 ; orbit, 155, 192 ; plane of motion and distance from the sun, 193 ; period of revolutions, 194 ; telescopic aspect, 196.
 Meridian, the, 19.
 Meteoroids, defined, 207 ; account of, 203-209 ; meteors, 204 ; meteoric stones and iron, 206 ; numbers of, 207 ; showers of, 208 ; Leonids and Perseids, 208.
 Milky-Way, 6, 231.
 Minor planets, 186, 188.
 Mira, variable star in Cetus, 228.
 Moon, the, opportunities to observe, 91 ; apparent diurnal revolution, 92 ; real or proper motion, 93 ; revolution round the earth, opposition and conjunction, 94 ; moon's orbit, and her variation in apparent size, 96 ; sidereal and synodical revolution, 97 ; motion round sun, 98 ; moon's path among the stars, 99 ; nodes, 102 ; phases and quarters, 103 ; eclipses and observation, 104 ; position of crescent, 105 ; rotation on axis, 106 ; librations, 107 ; times of rising, 108 ; harvest moon, 109 ; north and south motion, 110 ; revolution of nodes, 111 ; eclipses, 112-118 ; distance from the earth, 193 ; telescopic aspect and physical condition, 202.
 Nadir. The nadir is the point of the celestial sphere under our feet. It is one pole of the celestial horizon, 19.
 Nebulæ ; definition ; nebulæ in Andromeda, Cancer, and Orion ; planetary, ring-shaped, oval and spiral nebulæ ; spectra of nebulæ, 232.
 Nebular theory, 234.
 Neptune, major and superior planet ; its discovery, 161 ; motions as a superior planet described, 123-140 ; form, 189 ; diameter and volume, 190 ; density, 191 ; orbit, 192 ; plane of orbit and distance from the sun, 193 ; period of revolutions, 194 ; physical condition and telescopic aspect, moons, 201, 234.
 New style, 88, 89.
 Newton, Sir Isaac, 160, 162.
 Nodes. These are points where the orbits of bodies revolving round the sun cross the plane of the ecliptic. They cross, going south, at the descending node ; going north, at the ascending node. When we see them apparently crossing the ecliptic on the celestial sphere, this is the effect of projection, but they are then crossing the plane of the ecliptic, 102.
 Nomenclature of the fixed stars, 4.
 Nubecula Major and Nubecula Minor, 233.
 Obliquity of the sun's rays, 63-68.
 Occultation of stars by the moon, 202 ; of Jupiter's moons by Jupiter, 199.
 Old style, 88, 89.
 Ophiuchus, new star in, 229.
 Opposition. A planet or the moon is in opposition with the sun when sun, earth, and planet are in line with the earth in the middle, 95, 125, 128.
 Orbits. These are the paths of bodies revolving around the sun or some planet, 39, 43, 46, 96, 192, 193.
 Orion, nebula in, 232.
 Pallas, minor planet, 188.
 Parallaxic motions, the sun's motion north and south, 28 ; retrograde motion of the superior planets, 133-139 ; secular motion of fixed stars toward a point in Hercules, 219.
 Parallax. An observer's change of place causes a displacement of bodies on the background against which he sees them. This is called parallax, 166 ; horizontal parallax, the parallax of Mars, Venus, and the moon, 166, 167 ; annual parallax of some fixed stars, 224.
 Parallels. Celestial parallels are small circles parallel to the ecliptic, 48 ; parallel lines appear convergent, 44.
 Pavo, the Peacock, southern circumpolar constellation, 235.
 Penumbra, 112.
 Perigee. The position of the sun or moon when at their least distance from the earth, 46.
 Perihelion. This is the point nearest the sun's center, on the orbit of a heavenly body revolving round the sun, 46.
 Perseids, a stream of revolving meteors, 208.
 Perseus, cluster of stars in, 230.
 Perturbations of planetary bodies, 160.
 Phases, of the moon, 103 ; of Venus, 149 ; of Mars, 149, note ; of Mercury, 155 ; of Saturn's rings, 200.
 Phoenix, a southern circumpolar constellation, 235.

Photosphere, the sun's, 178-182.

Planets, of ecliptic, 39, 40; of planetary orbits, 139, 144, 193.

Planets, defined and distinguished, 1, 118, 168; superior and inferior, 127, 140, 188; major and minor planets, 187, 188; primary and secondary, 218; motion of superior planets discussed, 120-140; their synodical revolutions, oppositions, and conjunctions, 125; their proper motions, 126; variation in apparent size, variation distance from opposition to conjunction, 127; sidereal revolutions, 128; period of revolutions, how learned, 130; appearances discussed, 131, 132; their retrograde motions, 133-138; summary of observations of superior planets, 139; motions of inferior planets discussed, 140-156; their apparent daily revolutions, 142; proper motions, 143; paths among the stars, and the ecliptic, 144; elongations, 145; theory of motions, 147; their conjunctions, 148; their phases, 149; variations in apparent size, 146, 155; transits, 150, movements as morning stars, 151; retrograde motions, 152; how we learn their synodical and sidereal periods, 153, 154; the planets of all classes, 186-203; their forms, 189; diameters and volumes, 190; densities, 191; orbits, 192; planes of orbits and distances from the sun, 193; periods of revolutions, 194; rotations, 195; telescopic appearances and physical conditions, 196-203.

Pleiades, the, cluster of stars in Taurus, 230.

Pointers, the, stars in Great Dipper, 7.

Poles, the celestial, 13; elevated and depressed poles, 21; revolution of, 77.

Polhymnia, a minor planet, its orbit, 192.

Pollux, 1st m. star, 5; its color, 223.

Precession of equinoxes, 76-79.

Procyon, 1st m. star, 5; color and physical constitution, 223.

Prominences, the solar, 183-185; similar phenomena of fixed stars, 229.

Quadrature. A planet or the moon is in quadrature with the sun when lines drawn from the earth to the sun and planet make a right angle. At quadrature the heavenly bodies are on the meridian at sunrise and sunset. The time of quadrature is half-way between opposition and conjunction. The symbol of quadrature is \square , 202.

Radiant point, 208.

Radius vector, 159.

Refraction, 164.

Regulus, 1st m. star, 5; motion of, 222.

Retrograde motion of superior planets, 133-139; of inferior planets, 152; of meteors, 208.

Revolutions. Apparent diurnal revolution of stars, 8; of sun, 9; of moon, 92; of planets, 125, 142; apparent annual revolution of stars, 24; of sun on the ecliptic, 47; synodical revolution of the

moon, 94-98; of the superior planets, 125, 130, 153, 194; diurnal rotation of earth on her axis, 10, 11; annual revolution of earth round the sun, 35, 36; sidereal revolution of moon, 97; of the planets, 128, 154, 194; revolution of the moon's nodes, 111; of the equinoctial points upon the ecliptic, 76; of perihelion and aphelion points of the earth's orbit, 75; of celestial poles, 76-79; apparent revolution of the earth on the ecliptic (as seen from the sun), 47; revolution of double stars around a center, 227.

Rigel, β star, 5; motion of, 222.

Right ascension. This is angular distance measured east on the ecliptic from the first point of Aries, that is from the intersection of the ecliptic and equinoctial in Pisces, 18.

Satellites, a name applied to moons, 198-200.

Saturn, a superior and major planet, how to find it, 120-124; comparative distance from the earth at conjunction, 127; at opposition, 138; Saturn's motions as a superior planet, 120-140; his form, 189; volume and diameter, 190; density, 191; orbit, 192; plane of orbit, and distance from the sun, 193; periods of revolution, 194; rotation, 195; rings, moons, telescopic aspect, and physical condition, 200; attraction for comets, 212, 213.

Seasons, the, 63-71.

Sirius, 1st m. star, 5; motion of, 222; physical constitution, 223.

Solar system, the, 168.

Solstices, summer and winter, 49.

Southern Cross, southern circumpolar constellation, 235.

Spectra, bright-lined, 173; reversed and continuous, 174; solar spectrum, 177; spectra of chromosphere and solar prominences, 182-184; of the solar corona, 185; of comets, 215; of fixed stars, 223; of nebulae, 232.

Spectroscope, description of, 175; spectroscopy and motion, 176.

Spica, 1st m. star, 5; color and physical constitution, 223.

Stars, fixed, definition, 1; constellations of, 2; magnitudes, 3; nomenclature, 4; apparent diurnal revolution, 8; paths of diurnal motion, 22, 23; enormous distances of, 41, 44; secular apparent motion of the stars, 219; secular proper motion of, 220; star-drift, 221; motion of principal stars toward or from us, 222; physical constitution of the stars and resemblance to the sun, 223; annual parallax and their distances from us, 224; fixed stars in telescope, 225; numbers of the fixed stars, 226; double and multiple stars, 227; variable stars, 228; new stars, 229; star-clusters, 230; nebulous stars, 232.

Sun, the, apparent diurnal motion of, 9; does not make annual revolution, 25, 38; solar days, 26; apparent motion of the sun north and south, 28; sun stationary, 28, 50; revolution on the ecliptic, 47; measurement of the sun's annual mo-

tion on the ecliptic, 51; variation in distance and apparent size, 43, 46; unequal motion on the ecliptic, 72; eclipses of, 115; measurement of distance from the earth, 167, 193; diameter, volume, mass, 169; light of, 170; heat of, 171; telescopic appearance, 178-186; solar spectrum, 177; chemical elements in the sun, 177; elements in chromosphere, 183, 184; corona, 185; faculae and granules, 180; sun-spots, 181; rotation and inclination of axis to the plane of the ecliptic, 181; secular motion of the sun, 219; comparison of the sun and the fixed stars, 223.

Talks with Observers, page 81.

Telescope, the, Appendix B, page 86.

Temperature, annual change of, 63-72; temperature and length of days, 70.

Terminator. The line separating the dark and illuminated portions of the moon, 202.

Tides, the, 163.

Time, or the calendar, 81-91.

Titan, moon of Saturn, 200.

Toucan, a southern circumpolar constellation, 230, 235.

Transits of Venus, 150, 167; of the moons of Jupiter, 199.

Tropics of Cancer and Capricorn, 62, 80.

Tycho Brahe, 159.

Tycho, a crater on the moon, 202.

Umbra, 112.

Uranus, a superior and major planet, discovery of, 187; for explanation of his motions, see account of superior planets, 120-140; volume and diameter, 190; density, 191; orbit, 192; plane of orbit and distance from the sun, 193; period of his sidereal and synodical revolutions, 194; rotation, 195; physical condition and telescopic aspect, moons, 201.

Vega, 1st m. star, 5; motion of, 222; color and physical constitution of, 223.

Venus, an inferior and major planet, 140, 187; how to find her, 141; apparent diurnal revolution, 142; proper motion, 143; comparative rate of angular motion, 143; Venus and the ecliptic, 144; her elongations, 145; variation in brilliancy, 146; explanation of her motions, 147; her conjunctions, 148; her phases, 149; her transits, 150, 167; Venus, morning star, 151; her diameter and volume, 190; density, 191; orbit, 192; plane of orbit and distance from the sun, 193; time of revolution, 194; rotation, 195; atmosphere and physical condition, 197.

Volumes of planets, 190.

Year, the, tropical and sidereal, 81; calendar year, 86-90; leap-year, 86.

Zenith. This is the point of the celestial sphere directly over the observer's head, 19.



APPLETONS' SCIENCE TEXT-BOOKS.

RECENTLY ISSUED.

Appletons' School Physics.

BY JOHN D. QUACKENBOS (*Literary Editor*), ALFRED
M. MAYER, FRANCIS E. NIPHER, SILAS W.
HOLMAN, FRANCIS B. CROCKER.

PREVIOUSLY PUBLISHED.

The Elements of Chemistry.

BY F. W. CLARKE.

The Essentials of Anatomy, Physiology,
and Hygiene.

BY ROGER S. TRACY, M. D.

A Compend of Geology.

BY JOSEPH 'LE CONTE.

Elementary Zoology.

BY C. F. HOLDER AND J. B. HOLDER, M. D.

Descriptive Botany.

BY ELIZA A. YOUMANS.

Applied Geology.

BY SAMUEL G. WILLIAMS.

Physiological Botany.

BY DR. ROBERT BENTLEY,
EDITED BY ELIZA A. YOUMANS.